

DAUGAVPILS UNIVERSITĀTE

---

HUMANITĀRĀ FAKULTĀTE

Angļu valodas katedra

L. Rumjanceva,

B. Kalniņa

# ENGLISH GRAMMAR

## II

*Practice*

Part 2



2003

Apstiprināts  
DU Mācību padomes sēdē  
2003. gada 17. februārī,  
protokols Nr. 61.

Grāmata "English Grammar. Morphology" (I) un  
"English Grammar. Practice" (II) domāta  
universitātes jaunāko kursu studentiem gramatisko iemaņu  
izkopšanai un tālākveidošanai, kā arī studentu komunikatīvo  
prasmju attīstīšanai gramatikas jomā.

Recenzenti: Dr. paed. **Larisa Sardiko**,  
Mag. paed. **Aivars Dunsķis**

---

## PREFACE

---

The textbook “**English Grammar**” is intended for the junior students of the Daugavpils University. The aim of the book is to consolidate and develop students’ knowledge and skills in the use of English grammar forms and structures.

The book consists of two parts: “**Morphology**” and “**Practice**”.

**Book I** presents all English parts of speech, focusing on their categories and functions. The rules are illustrated with examples. Each chapter ends with *comprehension questions* to check students’ understanding.

Besides, the questions give students a better idea of the contents of the material presented and encourage them to reflect on it.

**Book II** (part 1 and 2) includes various exercises meant for developing students’ skills in the use of the grammar forms and structures described in Book I. The exercises are focused on the comprehension of the form, meaning and use of the grammar structures through reflection on the forms, their transformation and selection.

Besides, each unit of Book II has *translation exercises*, necessary for the comparison of the corresponding English and students’ native grammar constructions.

It is also important to relate each grammar construction to various communicative situations in which it may occur. Thus there are special *communicative exercises* at the end of each unit.

At the end of each section there are *revision exercises*, aimed at both consolidating and testing the material that has been presented in earlier chapters.



# CONTENTS

<b>The Modal Auxiliary Verbs</b> .....	<b>7</b>
Can .....	7
May .....	13
Must .....	19
Have (got) to .....	27
Be to .....	29
Ought to .....	33
Should/Ought to .....	35
Should .....	35
Shall .....	39
Will/Would .....	41
Need .....	43
Dare .....	45
Revision Exercises .....	46
Test Yourself .....	60
Translation Exercises .....	61
<b>The Subjunctive Mood</b> .....	<b>65</b>
Adverbial Clauses of Unreal Condition .....	65
The Subject Clause .....	71
The Predicative Clause .....	72
The Object Clause .....	74
Adverbial Clauses of Comparison (Manner) .....	81
Adverbial Clauses of Purpose .....	84
Adverbial Clauses of Concession .....	86
Simple Sentences .....	87
Revision Exercises .....	88
Test Yourself .....	92
Translation Exercises .....	93
<b>The Verbals</b> .....	<b>96</b>
The Participle .....	96
Participle I .....	96
Participle II .....	102
Predicative Constructions with the Participle .....	106
Revision Exercises .....	115
Test Yourself .....	118
Translation Exercises .....	120

<b>The Gerund</b> .....	<b>123</b>
Revision Exercises .....	139
Test Yourself .....	142
Translation Exercises .....	143
<b>The Infinitive</b> .....	<b>144</b>
Predicative Constructions with the Infinitive .....	159
Revision Exercises .....	166
Test Yourself .....	168
Translation Exercises .....	169
<b>The Preposition</b> .....	<b>171</b>
Prepositions of Place and Movement .....	171
Prepositions of Time .....	181
Prepositions of Grammatical and Lexical Relations .....	185
Revision Exercises .....	192
Test Yourself .....	196
<b>The Conjunction</b> .....	<b>198</b>
<b>The Interjection</b> .....	<b>201</b>
<b>The Particle</b> .....	<b>202</b>
Revision Exercises .....	202
<b>Bibliography</b> .....	<b>205</b>

---

# THE MODAL AUXILIARY VERBS

---

## Can

### Ex. 1. Ask and answer according to the model.

Model: He can play the guitar well. – Can he play the guitar well?  
– Yes, he can/ No, he can't.

1. My brother can do this work easily. 2. Mary can play the piano. 3. He can speak English. 4. Nick can speak French. 5. Betty can paint well. 6. They can play chess. 7. She can teach French. 8. The child can learn many words. 9. We can see the new words on the blackboard clearly. 10. Jane can type quickly. 11. I can buy a new dress. 12. She can dance well. 13. The girl can skate well. 14. The pupil can read the new text fluently. 15. My sister can do this work easily.

### Ex. 2. Confirm the statements.

Model: He can play football.  
He can play football, can't he? – Yes, he can.  
He cannot play football, can he? – No, he can't.

1. The students can read and write French. 2. They can't play tennis. 3. I can see the picture well. 4. They can take part in the competition. 5. You can't go there. 6. She can't dance well. 7. We can't go to the cinema now. 8. She can do this exercise. 9. I can hear you well. 10. He can't get tickets to the opera. 11. I can read this article. 12. We can't go shopping. 13. I can finish this work in time. 14. He can drive well. 15. They can't help me.

### Ex. 3. Refer the sentences to the past or future. Make all the necessary changes.

Model: I can't see his face. → I couldn't see his face. → I'll not be able to see his face.

1. You can't prove anything now. 2. I can't make out what you mean. 3. I can't understand what she says. 4. I don't think you can do anything for me. 5. She cannot answer your question. 6. I cannot answer your question. 7. You can't recognize him, he is a new man. 8. She can't get in touch with me. 9. You can't do anything of the sort. 10. She can't believe her eyes. 11. I can't really understand your question.

### Ex. 4. Fill in the gaps, using *can* for present, *could* for past and *shall/will be able to* for future.

1. ... you stand on your head? I ... when I was at school but I ... not now.  
2. ... you type? – Yes, I ... type but I ... not do shorthand. 3. When I've

passed my driving test I ... hire a car from our local garage. 4. At the end of the month the Post Office will send him an enormous telephone bill, which he ... pay (negative). 5. When the fog lifts we ... see where we are. 6. You've put too much in your rucksack; you never ... carry all that. 7. When I was a child I ... understand adults, and now that I am an adult I ... understand children (negative, negative). 8. When I first went to Spain I ... read Spanish but I ... speak it (negative). 9. I'm locked in. I ... get out! (negative). 10. I ... learn this poem by heart.

**Ex. 5. Use *could* or *was/were able to*.**

1. She ... sing like an angel. 2. She does not smoke any longer, because I ... persuade her to give up smoking. 3. In his childhood he ... climb high trees. 4. Happily, John ... swim across the river, otherwise he would have drowned. 5. He was a terrific liar: he ... make anybody believe him. 6. I talked for a long time, and in the end I ... make her believe me. 7. They were not busy. They ... repair my car, but didn't do it. 8. I was lucky enough to buy a cheap but nice coat. I ... get 15 % off the price. 9. After six hours' climbing, they ... reach the top of the mountain. 10. My friend ... speak ten languages. 11. My son was very good at figures. He ... do sums better than anyone. 12. The police were suspicious at first but I ... convince them that we were innocent. 13. I had no key so I ... lock the door (negative). 14. We ... borrow umbrellas, so we didn't get wet. 15. At five years old he ... read quite well.

**Ex. 6. Use *can*, *be able to* in the appropriate form to define the following notions:**

Model: a linguist → Student A: Whom do we call a linguist?  
Student B: A linguist is a person who studies languages and can explain their usage.

An artist; a poet; a driver; an actor; a musician; a skater; a dancer; a student; a reader; a writer.

**Ex. 7. Express strong doubt and surprise about the statements made in the following sentences (give two variants in each case).**

Model: 1. He knows the language quite well.  
a) Can (could) he know the language quite well?  
b) He can't (couldn't) know the language quite well.  
2. He is waiting for someone.  
a) Can (could) he be waiting for someone?  
b) He can't (couldn't) be waiting for someone.  
3. I have done it.  
a) Can (could) she have done it?  
b) She can't (couldn't) have done it.



1. He understands every word you say. 2. She is really fond of the child. 3. They know how to get there. 4. She is crying. 5. She is looking for somebody. 6. She is always interfering and criticizing every single thing we do. 7. They are always fighting. 8. But they are very fond of each other. 9. She is trying so hard to please everybody. 10. Children like to play here. 11. He is speaking the truth. 12. Macomber saw the lion move. 13. There was one public meeting in the town itself. 14. The message had been pushed under the front-door. 15. On Friday morning Bill came to my office again. 16. She has gone down the garden path. 17. He has looked at the papers. 18. He feels real bad about it. 18. The children are playing by the pond. 19. She knows all about it by this time.

**Ex. 8. Respond to the statements given below using *can (could)* to express doubt or incredulity. Begin your response with one of the following formulas: *Really? Do you really mean it? Is that so? I can hardly believe my ears.***

1. I tried to get at Mary but in vain. Her telephone is dead all the time. 2. Jack is anything but a good sport. He refused to give us a lift last night. 3. Your sister is a regular kill-joy. We tried to draw her into the general talk but she wouldn't utter a word. 4. Where are my new gloves? I looked for them everywhere but couldn't find them. 5. They dashed by without so much as saying 'Hallo'. Strange, isn't it? 6. She didn't get through her examination. Failed miserably. 7. I'm sure she's fallen ill again. She may never be well again. 8. She's such an irritable lot. Quarrelled with the whole group already.

**Ex. 9. Change the following sentences to express impossibility using the modal verb *can* and the proper form of the infinitive. Follow the example.**

Model: I am sure it isn't true. (to be too silly)  
It can't (couldn't) be true. It is too silly.

A. 1. I am sure Margaret doesn't believe these lies. (to be a clever girl) 2. I am sure Professor Leigh isn't at his office now. (to leave an hour ago) 3. I am sure sensible people do not make such promises. (to be impossible to keep them) 4. I am sure Michael isn't playing chess. (to be busy) 5. I am sure Nora isn't working at her graduation paper. (to take her exams now) 6. I am sure the Palmers aren't staying in town. (to be too hot) 7. I am sure boys don't like such stories. (to be sentimental) 8. I am sure Mrs. Davis isn't making a cake now. (to go to the shop five minutes ago) 9. I am sure Monica and her friends aren't listening to music. (to have an examination tomorrow) 10. I am sure Mr. Carter doesn't remember such trifles. (to be a busy man)

- B. 1. I am sure the students haven't been writing the test for an hour. (to be only nine o'clock) 2. I'm sure Roger hasn't spent so much money on clothes. (to take only books) 3. I am sure the Jacksons haven't come back from their trip. (not to answer the phone) 4. I am sure Stan didn't go to the football match yesterday. (to see him at the Ansleys at the time) 5. I am sure Anne didn't get married last month. (not to tell anybody about it) 6. I am sure Philip didn't stay at home last evening. (to try to get in touch with him and fail) 7. I am sure Bess hasn't been working in the reading-room more than half an hour. (not to see her there an hour ago) 8. I am sure the Blakes haven't been living in our town for ten years. (to live in Boston five years ago) 9. I am sure they haven't been watching television so long. (to be too boring) 10. I am sure she was not talking on the telephone with Mary when I came. (to be at hospital)

**Ex. 10. Refer the following sentences to the past. Make the necessary changes.**

1. You can provide for her now. 2. 'It can't be true, because it is unfair!' exclaimed David. 3. You can drop me off at Darlington, if you don't mind. 4. Algy, can you wait for me till I am thirty-five? 5. Ashley doesn't mean anything to her, except a friend. She can't be crazy about him. It's us she's crazy about. 6. 'Can't you believe me, mother?' His mother shook her head. 7. But it can't be right for your father to pour spirits down her throat like that. 8. 'Can she fail to recover?' thought Bart. 9. Happy is a man who can make a living by his hobby. 10. It can't possibly be Walter. He doesn't leave the library till five. 11. What can they be discussing? 12. You can spot an Irishman or a Yorkshireman by his brogue. I can place any man within six miles. I can place him within two miles in London. 13. I'm getting chilled to the bone. What can Freddy be doing all this time? He's been gone twenty minutes. 14. 'It's an amazing night', said young Tashburgh on her other side: 'Couldn't we get out?' 15. She cannot deceive me. Her name cannot be Doolittle.

**Ex. 11. Form requests, expressions of permission, prohibition, using the following word combinations.**

Model: to leave the child with its grandparents

1. *request*: Can (could) you leave the child ... .
2. *permission*: You can leave the child ... .
3. *prohibition*: You can't leave the child ... .

to help smb. with his work; to do smth. directly one returns; to wait a minute; to take smb's picture; to take the child out walking; to have cream with one's tea; to drop in at a shop for some face-cream; to discuss the subject with one's friends.

**Ex. 12. Open the brackets using the appropriate form of the infinitive.**

1. He can (to press) his suit himself, why should you do it? 2. The boy could not (to remain) sitting for such a long time, and he ran away. 3. He could not (to do) it, he is noble. 4. Oliver could not (to stay) in the room for a quarter of an hour when a funny gentleman came in. 5. Can I (to sleep) for such a long time? It seems to me that I have just gone to bed. 6. He cannot (to skate), I know that he is in the reading room. 7. He could (to fall ill), as he had chilled to the bone. 8. I cannot (to catch a chill) because I go in for swimming all the year round. 9. Can I (to get) some cool drink here? 10. Could these people (to come) to our meeting? 11. They cannot (to overlook) the possibility of our joining them. I think they are ready to accept us. 12. Can they (to lock) the door when they left the house and (to forget) to leave the key for me? 13. She cannot (to take treatment) this year, she looks quite ill. 14. This story cannot (to be read) without a dictionary. 15. He cannot (to walk) in the park in his patent shoes, it is raining cats and dogs.

**Ex. 13. Fill in the blanks disjunctive questions. Ask your friends to answer the questions.**

Model: A. He can help his mother about the house, can't he?  
B. Yes, he can. He can polish the floors and dust the furniture.

1. You can get a lot by reading, ...? 2. You can't change a ten-shilling note, ...? 3. You can't prove his innocence, ...? 4. You can't unlock the door, ...? 5. He can play such difficult things on the piano, ...? 6. He can speak English fluently, ...? 7. Such a good girl can't have refused to help her old grandmother, ...? 8. I think that a little girl couldn't have embroidered such a pattern, ...? 9. The girl could have made the shirt herself if she had been taught to sew, ...? 10. Mr. Smith gained a lot from his trip to the East of our country. He can tell us many interesting things, ...? 11. She can succeed as a teacher if she works hard, ...?

**Ex. 14. Complete the following sentences.**

1. He couldn't have said that ... 2. She cannot have disobeyed her teacher because ... 3. She couldn't have done such a thing ... 4. They can't have invited him ... 5. They can't have finished this work ...

**Ex. 15. Use the modal verb *can* in the past tense to make the following questions more polite as shown in the example.**

Model: Where is the post-office?  
Could you tell me or show me where the post-office is?

1. How is it done? 2. When does the train from Edinburgh arrive? 3. Which is the best way to Victoria Station? 4. Is there a way through? 5. What languages does Professor Smith speak? 6. When is Mr. Taylor expected to come back? 7. What subjects are taught in this college? 8. What time does the matinee start? 9. When does the ticket window open? 10. Is there a bus to Windsor? 11. Why is Michael displeased?

**Ex. 16. Recast the following sentences using the verb *can*.**

1. Is it possible that he is speaking about that particular day? 2. It is impossible that these discomforts have spoiled your journey. 3. I don't think that he is looking forward to travelling with you. I am sure that he intends to spend the vacation in a rest home. 4. I doubt it greatly that they have gone to the county on such a nasty day. 5. I don't believe that this suit is so expensive, it looks quite cheap. 6. I can't believe it at all that he possesses a keen sense of humour now, he was never known to possess it in his youth. 7. I am quite convinced that he has not made everything up to the same standard, that is why the machine will not work. 8. He was not able to find shoes that would match his new suit in shade and colour. 9. How is it possible for her to make up for the lost time? 10. Is it possible that I shall have my photo taken just now? 11. Is it true that the boy has been sleeping for four hours already? He never sleeps so long, he may have fallen ill. 12. Is it possible that the advertisement has been hanging here for two weeks already? I pass this street every day on my way home but I never saw it up till now. 13. I can't believe that he has been disconcerted by my remark. I did not say anything particular. 14. I doubt it greatly that she is overcome by sorrow, I saw her laughing ten minutes ago.

**Ex. 17. Reproduce the following dialogues paying particular attention to the modal verb *can*.**

I

(When Mrs. Blake woke up in the morning, she had a bad pain in her side).

Mr. Blake (Phoned Dr. Smith):

Nobody answers. Can he have gone out?

Mrs. Blake: Please, keep trying. My side is getting worse. Could it be appendicitis?

Mr. Blake: Don't worry. I won't give up until I can get him. (Speaks into the telephone): Can I speak with Dr. Smith? Could you ask him to phone Mr. Blake? It's urgent. Thank you.

II

John: Could I go with you to the lecture on French music tomorrow night?

Mary: Certainly, you can.

John: Shall I call for you at seven-thirty?

Mary: No, I won't be home. Anne and I are to call on a friend of ours at six-thirty. Can I meet you somewhere?  
 John: Yes, of course. Whenever it is convenient to you.  
 Mary: Do you know where the university library is?  
 John: Yes. I'll wait for you there.  
 Mary: Can you make it by a quarter to eight?  
 John: I'm sure I can. Would Anne join us?  
 Mary: No, she can't. She has a date.

## May

### Ex. 1. Insert the correct form of *may/might* or *be allowed to*.

1. ... I bring my sister to the party? 2. He asked if he ... bring his sister to the party. 3. After they had finished their homework, the children ... watch TV. 4. He ... join the sports section as soon as he is through with his medical examination. 5. Becky's mother said that everybody ... to take part in the picnic. 6. He ... go home if he likes. 7. As soon as the boy ... leave the room, he smiled a happy smile and ran out to join his friends outside. 8. The doctor says I am much better. I ... get up for a few hours every day. 9. It ... snow, you'd better take a warm coat. 10. He said that it ... snow. 11. We ... as well stay here till the weather improves. 12. When he was a child he ... do exactly what he liked. 13. I don't think I'll succeed but I ... as well try. 14. I ... never see you again. 15. ... I see your passport, please?

### Ex. 2. Answer the questions according to the models.

Model A: May I take your text-book? → Do, please. (You are welcome. Yes, you may. Certainly.)

Model B: May I take your pencil? → No, please, don't. (No, you may not. No, you mustn't.)

1. May I have your pen for a moment? 2. May I use your dictionary? 3. May I ring you up in the evening? 4. May I come in? 5. May I take part in the competition? 6. May I visit the patient? 7. May I close the window? 8. May I go for a walk? 9. May I ask you a question? 10. May I stay here? 11. May I go to the cinema? 12. May I listen to your tape-recorder?

Model C: May I smoke here?

Yes, you may. Everyone smokes here.

No, you may not. Look at the sign. 'No smoking'.

No, you mustn't. There are children in the room.

1. May we organize an amateur theatre at our Institute? 2. May I take your apron to do the washing up? 3. May I have my photo taken against the background of the school? 4. May I invite my friend to our discussion? 5.

May I ask you to look after my child while I am doing some shopping? I'll be back in no time. 6. May we show the documentary film before our meeting? 7. May I park my car near your house for a couple of hours? 8. May I go for a walk with you this Sunday? 9. May I make a choice myself? I think I am grown up enough to settle my own matters. 10. May I speak to you in private? 11. May your son go to the theatre with me to see the play by Sheridan *The School for Scandal*?

**Ex. 3. Express doubt about the statements made in the following sentences. Use the perfect infinitive to refer the situation to the past where necessary.**

Model: 1. There is no charge for admission.

There **may (might) be** no charge for admission.

2. They shifted the piano to the third floor.

They **may (might) have shifted** the piano to the third floor.

1. They spent part of the summer here. 2. Dessie gripped the phone. 3. In the end Joe took on the job and went out with his wife. 4. She is not particular about such things. 5. She will devote all her life to it. 6. He does not believe it. 7. Here's where he went in. 8. He is lying in wait for you. 9. The woman was crying. 10. She is working in the garden. 11. There is a box of sweets in the cupboard. 12. He was at home yesterday evening. 13. They borrowed the books from the library. 14. The children will be taken to the cinema. 15. She will be away from school for a few days.

**Ex. 4. Express your supposition about the following statements.**

Model: Ann is away from the classes.

*Student A:* She may come later.

*Student B:* She may be ill.

*Student C:* She may be sleeping. (She may have overslept)

1. Kate is running a high temperature. 2. Mary missed her train. 3. Pam sings well. 4. Bob is excited. 5. I can't find my book. 6. He couldn't recognize his friend. 7. It's late but the children have not returned from the forest yet. 8. Our excursion depends on the weather on Sunday. 9. Her proposal can't be accepted. 10. She was not admitted to the Institute.

**Ex. 5. Complete the following sentences using *may (might)* to express supposition.**

1. It's raining cats and dogs now but ... 2. Trains usually run on schedule on this line but today because of the storm the 4.50 ... 3. The weather is very fickle in our parts and ... 4. If we get hold of a taxi, we ... 5. Nick is always pressed for time but this time he ... 6. If we pass our exams well we ...

7. They are usually at home in the evenings but today they ... . 8. The girl has not come to the English class, she ... . 9. It was some special occasion. I don't remember what. It ... . 10. If he walks from the station, he ... .

**Ex. 6. Answer the following questions using the modal verb *may*. The expressions in brackets may provide cues for your answers.**

Model: Why does he look so pale? (to be ill)  
He may (might) be ill.

1. Why are there so many people on the platform? (to wait for the next train) 2. Why is John so busy? (to read for his examinations) 3. Why is he so tired? (to work in the garden) 4. Why doesn't Oscar want to see the film? (not to like detective stories) 5. Why doesn't Monica want to eat ice-cream? (to slim) 6. Why has the boy raised his hand? (to want to ask a question) 7. Why do you think Anne made so many spelling mistakes in the last dictation? (to be absent-minded) 8. Why is the child crying? (to hurt himself) 9. Why doesn't the girl want to bathe in the river? (to feel unwell) 10. Why haven't the Parkers arrived yet? (not to find a taxi) 11. Why hasn't Charles phoned us? (not to get our telegram) 12. Why has he refused to come to the party? (to be busy that day) 13. Why does Madge want to buy a new watch? (to lose her old one)

**Ex. 7. Express ironical requests based on the following sentences. Use the perfect infinitive to refer the situation to the past and in this way express reproach.**

Model: 1. You **do not remember** your child's birthday.  
You **might remember** your child's birthday.  
2. You **did not switch off** the lights before leaving.  
You **might have switched off** the lights before leaving.

1. You do not wear your new suit to the office. 2. You did not sew the buttons on, Alice. 3. You did not even notice how well she played. You do not pay enough attention to your child. 4. Do come and help me choose it. 5. You did not try hard enough. 6. You did not get up a little earlier and help me to clean up after the party. 7. You never let me know when something like this happens. 8. You didn't give a detailed account. 9. You did not meet her at the station.

**Ex. 8. Express reproach, giving possible reasons.**

Model: to visit one's friend – to be ill → She might visit her friend as he is ill.

*Prompts:* to tell all her friends – to help; to be more polite to the neighbour – to be good to smb; to be frank – to be friends; to write home regularly –

to be excited; to explain the material – to need; to introduce one's friend – to be impolite; to ring up – to wait; to help to translate the article – to be difficult; to avoid the accident – to be careless.

**Ex. 9. Express your irritation using the modal verb *might*.**

Model: When did he tell them?

He told them just now.

He might have told them sooner!

1. 'When did he say he was cancelling it?' 'He phoned us a few minutes ago.' 2. 'When did he suggest he was having second thoughts?' 'He mentioned it a minute or two ago.' 3. 'When did you get to hear of it?' 'He brought it up at the meeting.' 4. 'When did it come to light?' 'He revealed it the day before yesterday.' 5. 'When did he eventually agree to it?' 'He gave his consent late this afternoon.' 6. 'When did he say he might have to go back on his decision?' 'He informed them a day or two ago.' 7. 'When did he own up to taking it?' 'He admitted it an hour or so ago.'

**Ex. 10. Open the brackets using the appropriate form of the infinitive.**

1. He thought that Jack might still (to be) in his office. 2. Brown was not feeling particularly happy that morning, and this may (to be) the reason that he was glad of Mass' company. 3. I don't mind admitting that if she gets herself unpleasantly talked about it might (to have) some effect on the takings. 4. Arthur may (to run away) from home and (to go) to South America. 5. However badly he may (to behave) in the past, he is still your brother. 6. Then you have no idea why anyone might (to send) this letter? 7. He is one of those ageless unchanging men on the farther side of fifty, who might (to be) thirty, who might (to be) anything. 8. Mr. Ackroyd himself might (to admit) the stranger. 9. He may (not to sleep) since 9 o'clock. 10. He was of the opinion that the rivalry of the two ladies might (to breed) a quarrel between them. 11. She may (to know) Henry since her university days. 12. 'You might (to spare) me that scene', she said. 13. They may (to wait) for you downstairs. 14. It's always tricky to go nosing around in waters where there may (to be) a nuclear explosion. Especially submerged. You never really know what you may (to run) into. You may (to tangle) with a sunken ship you didn't know was there. You've got to go in carefully and watch your step. 15. 'If you want to know where Eliza is, she is upstairs'. 'But I think you might (to tell) us this half an hour ago'. 16. 'Where are the two ladies that were here?' 'They walked to the bus when the rain stopped'. 'They might (to wait) for me. Left me with a cab on my hands!'



**Ex. 11. Use *may* in the correct form followed by the appropriate infinitive.**

1. ... I (to ask) you to explain the rule once more? 2. She asked me if she ... (to switch off) the radio. 3. I'm afraid it ... not (to stop) raining by the evening. 4. We wish your journey ... (to be) successful. 5. My neighbour lent me her opera-glasses that I ... fully (to enjoy) the ballet. 6. No matter how bad the weather ... (to be) she never missed her everyday stroll after dinner. 7. Don't be angry with her. She ... (to do) it by mistake. 8. If nothing prevents them, they ... (to arrive) ahead of time. 9. It ... (to be taken) for a joke if his face had not been so serious. 10. You should not feel offended; they ... not (to notice) you. 11. Tell him he ... (to warn) me and not (to put) me in such an awkward position. He ... (to have) to walk a long distance; no wonder that he looks so tired.

**Ex. 12. Change the following sentences to express uncertainty using the modal verb *may* and the proper form of the infinitive. Follow the example.**

Model: Perhaps (maybe) he is (not) having dinner.  
He may (might) (not) be having dinner.

- A. 1. Perhaps Bess is making tea in the kitchen. 2. Maybe Paul sees him very often. 3. Maybe they are still having a holiday. 4. Perhaps his daughter is not studying in a teacher training college. 5. Maybe the doctor is examining the patient now. 6. Perhaps the manager is not busy. 7. Perhaps they are trying to persuade Jim to join the expedition. 8. Perhaps Sam is telling his friends about his adventures in the north. 9. Maybe Nancy is waiting for you in the hall. 10. Perhaps they are not taking part in the amateur theatricals. 11. Maybe Anne liked detective stories. 12. 'Perhaps the thing is radio-active. Perhaps it is dangerous'. George was breathless.
- B. 1. Perhaps the film will have a happy end. 2. Maybe he will not tell you the truth. 3. Maybe Jane will forgive him. 4. Perhaps the test will not be so difficult next time. 5. Maybe the Palmers will stay at home on Sunday. 6. Maybe the weather will not change for the worse. 7. Perhaps we shall get tickets for the play. 8. Maybe his parents will allow him to keep the dog. 9. We have quite a few noteworthy places of interest about the town that perhaps will interest you.
- C. 1. Perhaps your neighbours have left the town. 2. Maybe Sam hasn't made an appointment with the dentist. 3. Perhaps everybody has agreed to the plan. 4. Maybe they didn't send him a letter. 5. Maybe the situation has changed. 6. Perhaps they have bought a new coat for the boy. 7. Perhaps the old man has lost his way. 8. Maybe the text was not difficult. 9. Perhaps she was rude to him. 10. Maybe the tape recorder was out of

order. 11. Meanwhile he wrote a film-script for an English company; perhaps it was a suitable film for Annabel, but the company put another actress in the part.

- D. 1. Maybe the students have not been studying French long. 2. Maybe they have been staying at the hotel for more than a week. 3. Perhaps he has not been here long. 4. Perhaps Mr. Parker has been working in the garden since morning. 5. Perhaps Uncle Tom has been having a nap since lunch-time. 6. Perhaps he hasn't seen her since last spring. 7. Perhaps the child has been listening to our talk all the time. 8. Perhaps Jack has been collecting stamps for several years. 9. Maybe the boy has been delivering the papers since five o'clock. 10. Perhaps they have been watching television all evening.

**Ex. 13. Make the following sentences less certain by using *may* or *might*.**

Model: They will arrive tomorrow.  
They may arrive tomorrow.

1. Monica will study Swedish. 2. They had a dictation yesterday. 3. She will be late. 4. They are eating breakfast. 5. The boy lied to his teacher. 6. The old woman slipped on the ice. 7. They will go swimming tomorrow. 8. Mr. Bennet went to the bank to deposit some money. 9. Philip will tell them about the accident. 10. Sam decided to take the examination again. 11. He will finish writing the paper on time. 12. The playing field will be ready by next week.

**Ex. 14. Determine the meaning of the modal verb *may*. Translate the sentences into Latvian.**

1. May I ask what you intend to do? 2. 'I may have one or two people coming in tomorrow evening', she said. 'Why not join us?' 3. Fashions change so quickly nowadays: they may have altered by the time you get upstairs. 4. He looked embarrassed, and it occurred to me that he might have been listening at the door. 5. You might be more considerate to your parents who always think of your well-being. 6. He asked if he might bring his younger brother to the party. 7. You might have warned us that the dog was dangerous. 8. I'm sure the film will be dull – we might just as well stay at home. 9. Whatever else I may be, I am not a fool. 10. I can't say I remember noticing the box – but, of course, it may have been there all the time. 11. 'Okay', Vivian said, 'I might be a little late but not much.' 12. 'You may come tomorrow a little later', she said graciously. 13. I am certain she did not want to snub you; she may not have seen you in the crowd. 14. You may not go boating – it's too windy. 15. You may call me Dolly if you like, but you mustn't call me child. 16. Don't worry; the telegram may come tomorrow.

17. Charles may have been at the club all this time. 18. The boys may have been playing tennis since lunchtime. 19. It occurred to him that his hostess might be entertaining the guests in the garden. 20. Let me tell you my story, and by that time, you see, you may have made up your mind. 21. Fix your mind not on what you may have done long ago to hurt but on what you can do now to help. 22. You may be sure Rivarez has heard nothing of Grassiny's disapproval. He might have guessed it, though; he's sharp enough.

**Ex. 15. Retell the following jokes using the modal verb *may*.**

### ***1. In the Tram***

Conductor: May I put your bag out of the way, sir? People coming in are falling over it.

Passenger: No, you may not – leave it where it is. If nobody falls over it, I may forget it's there.

### ***2. Mark Twain's Answer***

When Mark Twain edited a newspaper in Missouri, one of his subscribers wrote to him that he had found a spider in his paper and he wished to know whether it might mean good or bad luck.

Mark Twain answered: 'Finding a spider in your paper is neither good luck nor bad. The spider was looking over the newspaper to see which merchant was not advertising, so that he might go to that shop, spin his web across the door and live a happy and peaceful life!'

### ***3. Too Late***

Husband (after a quarrel, bitterly):

I was a fool when I married you!

Wife: Yes, but I thought you might improve!

### ***4. A Way Out***

Woman (ringing up her doctor):

Can you come at once? My son has swallowed a pen!

Doctor: Sorry, I am busy now. You may not see me for three or four hours.

Woman: Three or four hours! What shall I do in the meantime?

Doctor: But you may use a pencil!

## **Must**

**Ex. 1. Respond according to the models.**

Model A: We make many mistakes. (work hard) → You must work hard.

1. Pete can't do this work himself. (help) 2. My friend is ill. (visit) 3. It is cold today. (stay at home) 4. There is a child in the room. (take care) 5. It is late.

(go to bed) 6. You are tired. (have a rest) 7. You look pale. (go for a walk)  
8. The film is very interesting. (discuss) 9. My mother doesn't know about  
it. (write) 10. This coat suits you. (buy)

Model B: There are children in the room. (smoke) ! You mustn't smoke  
here.

1. You look tired. (work hard) 2. It is my text-book. (take) 3. The child is  
sleeping. (make noise) 4. She is running a temperature. (go out) 5. You  
have much homework for tomorrow. (watch TV) 6. This test is not difficult.  
(help each other) 7. Mr. Smith is very busy now. (brother) 8. She is prepar-  
ing for her exams. (go to the cinema) 9. His disease is catching. (visit)

**Ex. 2. Paraphrase the following sentences using the modal verb  
*must*.**

Model: It is necessary for us to work hard. → We must work hard.

1. It is necessary for you to get up early. 2. It is necessary for you to go  
shopping. 3. It is necessary for you to listen to the lab-work. 4. It is neces-  
sary for you to leave her alone. 5. It is necessary for you to go to the dentist.  
6. It is necessary for you to see this film. 7. It is necessary for you to inform  
your group-mates of it. 8. It is necessary for you to help Pete with his work.  
9. It is necessary for you to learn the poem by heart. 10. It is necessary for  
you to stay in bed.

**Ex. 3. Answer the questions according to the model.**

Model: Must I do this work? → Yes, you must. (No, you needn't)

1. Must I answer the questions? 2. Must I visit Ann? 3. Must we begin our  
work? 4. Must I help him? 5. Must I speak to the dean? 6. Must I explain the  
rule? 7. Must I stay after the lesson? 8. Must I spell the word? 9. Must we  
learn it by heart? 10. Must he repeat the word? 11. Must she also do it? 12.  
Must I come in the morning?

**Ex. 4. Replace the infinitives in brackets by *must, have* or *have got +*  
*infinitive* (give several variants where possible).**

Model: 1. Sorry, I (to leave) you for some minutes. I hear the baby crying.  
I **must leave** (or **have to leave**, or **have got to leave**) you for  
some minutes ... .  
2. She couldn't attend. She was driving and (to watch) the road.  
She **had to watch** the road.  
3. If we miss this train, we (to wait) for over an hour.  
We'll **have to wait** for over an hour.  
4. He said he (to see) you.  
He said he **must see** (or **had to see**) you.

1. I'm afraid I (to go) now. I (to do) some shopping before school. 2. Will you please, hold the line a minute, darling? I (to change) the baby before I can speak to you. 3. If you go there in the morning, you (not to wait). 4. We could not come, Henry (to take) some out-of-town relations to the theatre. 5. He's out. I'm afraid you (to come) another time. 6. I can't simply (to see) him to-night. If he is engaged, I (to wait). That's all. 7. There was only an old lady before us, so we (not to wait) long. 8. It was a small family affair, so we (not to change). 9. I (to tell) you it was not so simple after all. We (to tell) him all the details. 10 There's not a single room to be got at any of the hotels. I'm afraid we (to stay) at mother's. 11. He said he (to go) out and would come in after lunch.

**Ex. 5. Ask questions about the necessity of the actions in the sentences below. Give negative answers.**

Model: 1. I'm afraid I must go now.  
a) Must you really go? – I need not.  
b) Do you have to go? – I don't have to.  
2. I had to show her how to do it.  
Did you have to show her how to do it? – I did not have to show her.  
3. I'll have to do some shopping.  
Will you have to do some shopping? – I shan't have to do any shopping.

1. I must go and lay the table myself. 2. We had to walk all the way to the station. 3. She had to change her shoes after walking in the garden. 4. I have to speak to her about it. 5. Mother had to tell her plainly what she thought of it. 6. We'll have to run. 7. I must go to the shop and have the shoes changed. They're a size too small. 8. I had to put her to bed at once. 9. You'll have to do something about it. 10. Someone will have to stay and warn them.

**Ex. 6. In the following statements of near certainty change the form of the infinitive to refer the statement to the past.**

Model: They must **know** him. – They must **have known** him.  
They must **be waiting** for you. – They must **have been waiting** for you.

1. It must be raining. 2. She must be pleased about it. 3. She must be really fond of you. 4. They must be always trying to help him. 5. She must know nothing about it. 6. She must be out shopping. 7. This must be the prettiest garden in the village. 8. She must be the youngest child in her class. 9. Somebody must be trying to get you on the phone. 10. The children must be at school now.

**Ex. 7. Paraphrase the following sentences using *must* + infinitive to express near certainty. Use the indefinite infinitive when speaking about the present, the perfect infinitive when speaking about the past.**

Model: 1. Of course, he **is** somewhere. – He **must be** somewhere here.  
2. Certainly, she **knew** that something was wrong. – She **must have known** that something was wrong.

1. Probably, he recognized you by your photo in the papers. 2. He is sure to be in at this time. 3. Of course, she is trying to help you. 4. She is certain to be waiting for you at home. 5. Probably, he was already ill. 6. There is little doubt that the first experiment failed. 7. No doubt, she knew what she was about to do. 8. I'm sure she is very fond of the child. 9. They are sure to have taken the wrong turning. 10. Probably, he was taken there by car.

**Ex. 8. Read the sentences, which describe a situation. Use the verb *must* and the appropriate form of the Infinitive in order to express your opinion about what is said. Give as many different suggestions as you can.**

Model: Peter looks very tired.

A: He must have worked a lot yesterday.

B: He must be working too hard.

C: He must be unwell.

D: He must have a rest.

1. Peter was late for the first lecture. 2. Peter is absent from the lesson. 3. Peter is sneezing and coughing. 4. She began to cry after she had read that letter. 5. He knows many things about England. 6. He knows every street in Riga. 7. I invited Peter to call on us yesterday, but he didn't come. 8. I expected Peter to ring me up last night, but he didn't. 9. I want to show you Peter's photograph, but I can't find it. 10. Peter was to take his examination in English yesterday. When he came home he looked quite miserable. 11. In September many students of our group returned home healthy and sun-burnt. 12. I haven't seen him in London for a long time. 13. Peter and Ann had a quarrel yesterday. Today I see Peter with Ann again. 14. Peter returned home wet to the bone. 15. Peter looks dead tired and worn-out.

**Ex. 9. Answer the following questions using the modal auxiliary *must* to express probability in the past. The expressions in brackets may provide cues for your answers.**

Model: Why didn't Jane come to your birthday party? (to feel unwell)  
She must have felt unwell.

1. Why didn't Bess review the first ten lessons? (to have no time) 2. Why didn't Douglas shave today? (to be in a hurry) 3. Why didn't Professor

Morrison take a vacation last year? (to have much work) 4. Why didn't Sue go to bed early last night? (to wash her clothes) 5. Why didn't Mrs. Black buy a new hat? (to be short of money) 6. Why didn't he ask the question? (to feel shy) 7. Why did Michael buy this magazine? (to find an interesting article in it) 8. Why didn't he see a doctor? (to have a slight cold) 9. Why didn't the dentist pull out his bad tooth? (to stop it) 10. Why didn't Herbert take a taxi? (to fail to find one)

**Answer the following questions using the modal verb *must* to express probability in the present, the past and the future. Make use of the time indicators given in brackets.**

Model: When did he paint this picture? (last summer)  
He must have painted it last summer.

1. When did she take her niece to London? (last week) 2. When did Joan learn French? (in her childhood) 3. Is Aunt Agatha staying with the Browns? (last week) 4. When will Harry return to his studies? (next week) 5. When did Stan repair his car? (yesterday) 6. Is he taking psychology? (this term) 7. When was he offered a new job? (about a month ago) 8. When will Ken visit us? (in winter) 9. When will he be given an opportunity to work there? (next term) 10. When did Susan make friends with the Smiths? (last summer) 11. Is Nicholas studying chemistry at Columbia University? (this year) 12. When did he teach literature? (about ten years ago) 13. When did he discover the truth? (only recently) 14. When will Frank receive a master's degree? (in spring) 15. When did his working day start? (at eight o'clock) 16. When will they leave Brussels? (in August) 17. Is Mary having lunch? (now)

**Ex. 10. Change the following sentences using the modal verb *must* to express probability and the appropriate form of the infinitive.**

Model: Evidently he is at home.  
He must be at home.

A. 1. Evidently he is absent-minded. 2. Surely he is working at his lecture now. 3. Probably the subject is too difficult for him. 4. Evidently he is teaching at that college. 5. Evidently she is swimming in the pool. 6. It is probable that Jacob is feeling better. 7. Evidently Mr. Gray is ambitious. 8. Surely the friends are talking about something interesting. 9. Probably Nancy likes sweets. 10. Evidently he is thinking about something sad. 11. Evidently the Leighs are staying at the motel. 12. Probably they are holding an important conference. 13. He is likely to be disappointed with his new work. 14. No doubt they are trying to persuade her. 15. Certainly she is enjoying herself.

- B. 1. Certainly it was a funny experience. 2. Of course you saw things more objectively than I did. 3. Probably John called on them last week. 4. Evidently they have been playing bridge all evening. 5. Probably he has been looking up words in the dictionary for the past half hour. 6. Surely the Smiths have known him for ages. 7. Probably he has proposed to Margaret. 8. Evidently Mrs. Palmer has been shopping all morning. 9. Surely David had his final examinations last spring. 10. Evidently Ken has taken a vacation. 11. Evidently Monica showed them the slides of their trip. 12. Of course, Mr. Hunter has made good progress in French. 13. Probably he has been working at his book for the past three years.

**Ex. 11. Make up sentences with the modal verb *must* to express obligation or strong advice. Use the expressions given in the list below.**

Model: to start at once

You (he, Mary, etc.) must start at once.

to persuade smb. to do smth., to pull oneself together, to appoint a date for smth., to give smb. a warm welcome, to stand by one's friend, to book tickets today, to explain one's behaviour, to have a tooth filled, to ask smb. for permission, to see a doctor, to return a book (a magazine) to the library, to discuss the question at once, to work hard at one's pronunciation, to make friends with.

**Ex. 12. Open the brackets using the appropriate form of the infinitive.**

1. You must (not to smoke) here. This is a non-smoking compartment. 2. He has read many English books in the original. He must (to have) a good command of the language. 3. I can't find my point-pen anywhere. I must (to lose) it. 4. My friend was ill and missed many lessons. He must (to work) hard now to catch up with the group. 5. It's a pity that Nick did not go to the country with us. He must (to fall) ill. 6. Our friend is in trouble. We must (to help) him. 7. Your luggage is too heavy. You must (to take) a porter. 8. Ann refused to go to the cinema with us. She must (to see) this film already. 9. Look how sunburnt he is. He must (to spend) his vocation in the South. 10. Your whole future is concerned: you must (to decide) for yourself. 11. Mary must (to put on) her new dress: I don't see it in the wardrobe. 12. Peter spent his holiday in Brighton; that's where he must (to meet) Barbara. 13. The four o'clock bus must (to fail to arrive) on time; otherwise they would already be here. 14. They must (to discuss) something important when I came. 15. He must (to leave) the town; I haven't seen him of late. 16. I have heard you are staying in this hotel and I said to myself: I must (to look) him up. 17. Henry was so gloomy that I thought he must (to fail) his



exam. 18. Judging by his paleness he must (to work) too hard now. 19. We must (to ride) in the bus for more than half an hour, and we haven't reached even the suburbs. 20. He must (to live) next door to us for more than a decade, but we only have a nodding acquaintance with him. 21. 'People must (to know) things. I consider it my duty to tell them,' said Caroline. 22. You must (to forget) that she married very early. 23. I am sure you must (to know) why he did it. Tell me, I want to know all. 24. Sally must (to talk) on the telephone with a friend. Go on in. She'll be pleased to see you. 25. They must (to have) a holiday for a week now.

**Ex. 13. Complete the following sentences.**

1. He turned pale on hearing this news. It ... . 2. Our train starts in five minutes. We ... . 3. The child is crying bitterly. He ... . 4. It is raining cats and dogs. We ... . 5. He can't find his dictionary. He ... . 6. He has a good command of English. He ... . 7. Your brother is doing his lessons. You ... . 8. I can't find my favourite cup. My daughter ... . 9. Make haste. We ... . 10. Don't call on him tonight. He ... . 11. I hope that my friends will meet me at the station. They ...

**Ex. 14. Pay attention to the negative form of the predicate group without *not*. Translate the following sentences into Latvian:**

1. You must have **misunderstood** me. I didn't mean to hurt your feelings. 2. She must have **failed** to understand this rule, that's why the exercise is done in the wrong way. 3. Our telegram must have **never** reached them. No wonder they have not come to meet us. 4. **Nobody** must have seen him enter the hall. Everybody was surprised when he took the floor. 5. What a pity I could not say good-bye to them, but they must have had **no** chance to warn me about their departure. 6. He must be quite **unaware** of his clumsiness. 7. He must have left the letter **unanswered**.

**Ex. 15. Make the following sentences negative by using the verb *to fail*. Follow the model.**

Model: Roger must have understood the truth.  
Roger must have failed to understand the truth.

1. They must have caught the last train. 2. He must have written the test well. 3. They must have ordered tickets by phone. 4. George must have persuaded them to come. 5. Dick must have got there on time. 6. He must have found out the truth. 7. Jack must have unlocked the door with the key. 8. The boy must have delivered the telegram. 9. She must have explained her behaviour convincingly. 10. Robert must have pulled himself together.

**Ex. 16. Change the following sentences, making them opposite in meaning.**

1. Everybody must have noticed that he was not used to speaking in public.
2. He must have written to them of his arrival in due time.
3. She must have bolted the door forgetting that I was to come later.
4. He must have a fair chance of winning, he is in good form.
5. The man must have understood me, for he nodded his head.
6. She must have been quite conscious of having made a mistake.
7. They must have given us the correct information about the road. I can see all landmarks they have spoken of.
8. The telegram must have certainly come in time.
9. She must have been very careful. She did not spill a drop of milk.
10. He must have done something about it, I see some changes in the design.
11. The dog must have recognized his master. It did not bark as we approached the house.
12. He must have been very experienced in sailing navigation.

**Ex. 17. Reconstruct the following situations into dialogues using *must* to express supposition.**

1. You are looking for your gloves. You can't find them anywhere. You suppose that you've lost them. Your sister, however, believes that you've put them in the place they didn't belong.
2. Your friend is indignant that you didn't write to her at all from the rest home. You protest saying that you wrote to her twice. She then supposes that you mixed up the address.
3. You look in at Mary's place and are astonished to find it in apple-pie order. It looks spick and span. Usually it's at sixes and sevens. You suppose that she had a general turn-out quite recently.
4. Mary comes to the station in the nick of time. She is evidently winded. You are almost sure she had to race against time. You reprimand her for it.
5. Bob and you don't find Nick at home on Sunday. You suppose that he went hiking. Bob protests saying that he could not have done it without so much as telling you about his plans first. He is sure that he is in town and will turn up in no time.

**Ex. 18. Retell the following jokes using the modal verb *must*.**

***1. She Can't Read***

The Poet: Dash it – I can't find that sonnet anywhere. Anne must have thrown it out.

His Wife: Don't be absurd, Henry. The child can't read.

***2. The Importance of Keeping Cool***

In a recently published book about what to do in emergencies we are told that if our clothes catch fire, above all things we must keep cool.

### **3. How to Pull Out a Tooth**

'Excuse me', said the dentist to his victim, 'but before beginning this work I must have my drill'.

'Good heavens, man!' exclaimed the patient nervously. 'Must you have a rehearsal to pull out a tooth?'

### **4. After an Accident**

Traffic Cop: Now, Miss, what gear were you in at the time of the accident?

Demure Miss: I'm afraid I don't remember exactly, but I must have had on a black beret, tan shoes, and a tweed sports dress.

## **Have (got) to**

### **Ex. 1. Make the following sentences negative and interrogative.**

1. I have to go shopping every day. 2. He has to go to the dentist. 3. They had to work hard last year. 4. We have to cook our own meals. 5. Our parents have to help us. 6. She had to change trains in London. 7. I shall have to leave home early tomorrow. 8. He had to stay in the hospital after the operation.

### **Ex. 2. Respond according to the models.**

Model A: The Institute is far from my house. (to take a bus) → I have to take a bus.

1. The lessons begin at 8 a.m. (to get up early) 2. Ann is taking her exams. (to work hard) 3. My mother is ill. (to keep one's bed) 4. It is half past 7. (to leave) 5. I've missed a lot of lessons. (to catch up with the group) 6. Jack is a student. (to study many subjects) 7. I have no text-book. (to go to the library) 8. You have a toothache. (to go to the dentist) 9. The lecture begins in half an hour. (to hurry) 10. My friend can't translate this text himself. (to help) 11. Peter is away from classes. (to visit)

Model B: My friend was at home. (to wait) → I didn't have to wait.

1. We had a day-off yesterday. (to study) 2. I lived not far from the Institute last year. (to take a tram) 3. We had a lot of food at home on Sunday. (to go shopping) 4. I spent my summer holidays in the South. (to stay in town) 5. Last year our classes began at 2 o'clock. (to get up early) 6. We took a taxi at the station. (to walk) 7. She came in time. (we, to wait) 8. The text was easy. (we, to use a dictionary) 9. I felt much better on the next day. (to stay at home)

Model C: I have a headache. (to take a tablet) → You'll have to take a tablet.

1. I've lost my dictionary. (buy a new one) 2. The shop is closed. (to come again) 3. The dean is busy now. (to wait) 4. Father has fallen ill. (to change plans) 5. It is raining. (to take an umbrella) 6. We are going on an excursion. (to take a lot of food) 7. The train starts at 7 a.m. (to get up early) 8. This text is difficult. (to use a dictionary) 9. Ann doesn't know about the meeting. (to ring up)

### Ex. 3. Read the situations and make up dialogues.

**Model:** A: My mother fell ill yesterday.

B: Did you have to send for a doctor?

A: Yes, I did. She had a very high temperature.

1. I lost a book from the library. 2. Peter had a toothache. 3. Peter fell ill and missed many lessons. 4. I had to help Peter with his English. 5. I had to try on several dresses before I chose this one. 6. I had to waste a lot of time running about the town looking for a room in a hotel. 7. When I came to Riga I put up at the hotel 'Rome'. 8. I had much luggage when I was leaving for the Far East. 9. I had to call a porter to take my luggage to the waiting-room. 10. I looked at the watch and saw that we had very little time left. 11. I had to have a suit made to order. 12. On hearing the news she began to cry. 13. We had to put off the meeting till Friday. 14. I had to abandon all hope of seeing them soon.

### Ex. 4. Complete the sentences using *to have to*.

1. It's very cold now. All ... (wear warm things). 2. The task is difficult. You ... (work hard). 3. Jane's mother is ill. That's why Jane ... (miss lessons). 4. Nobody can do it for you. You ... (do it yourself). 5. They are very weak in English. They ... (repeat many words and rules). 6. She is very busy now. She ... (write the report by Monday). 7. The bus is never late. We ... (wait long). 8. We are busy in June. We ... (take exams at the Institute). 9. My sister is coming tomorrow. I ... (meet her at the station). 10. Bob has fallen ill. He ... (miss classes).

### Ex. 5. Ask your fellow-student:

1) if he/she has to work hard at English; 2) if he/she will have to take exams; 3) when he/she had to be at the meeting; 5) if he/she had to make a report at the meeting; 6) when he/she had to consult a doctor last; 7) how long he/she had to stay in bed when he/she was ill; 8) if he/she had to take medicine when he/she was ill; 9) if he/she will have to go to the dentist tomorrow; 10) if he/she has to go to the doctor often; 11) if he/she has to help his/her mother about the house; 12) what kind of housework he/she has to do; 13) if he/she has to go to the Institute every day.

**Ex. 6. Recast the sentences using the verb *to have*.**

1. Peter has a toothache. It will be necessary for him to go to the dentist's.  
2. How many exercises must he do? 3. I have lost my pen. It will be necessary for me to buy a new pen. 4. I have broken our sugar-basin. It will be necessary for me to buy a new one. 5. Peter was ill and missed many lessons, so it will be necessary for him to work hard in order to catch up with the group. 6. Peter had lost a book from the library. It will be necessary for him to buy another copy of this book. 7. My grandmother is short-sighted. It's necessary for her to wear eyeglasses. 8. We have missed the last tram. It will be necessary for us to walk home. 9. My watch is slow. It will be necessary for me to take it to the watchmaker. 10. He is going to see the play. It will be necessary for him to buy tickets beforehand. 11. He intends to put up at the hotel 'Rome'. It will be necessary for him to engage a room beforehand. 12. Peter was ill. It was necessary for him to stay in bed for two weeks. 13. It was necessary for him to go to the country though it was raining cats and dogs. 14. He looked so gloomy and disappointed. It was necessary for us to cheer him up. 15. My friend was in trouble. It was necessary for me to do everything in my power to help him.

**Ex. 7. Tell your fellow-student:**

- a) what you have to do and what you don't have to do every day;
- b) what you had to do and what you didn't have to do last year;
- c) what you will have to do and what you will not have to do in the future.

**Ex. 8. Develop the following sentences into situations in the form of dialogues:**

Model: I had to walk to the station. → Why did you have to walk to the station? – I couldn't take a taxi and that's why I had to walk to the station.

1. I had to help my sister with her English. 2. I had to get rid of that habit. 3. I had to explain everything first. 4. I had to wait for him. 5. I had to hurry. 6. I had to stay at home. 7. I had to persuade him. 8. I had to go back to the library.

## Be to

**Ex. 1. Put questions according to the model. Answer the questions.**

Model: The professor is to give us a lecture at 2. (When) → When is the professor to give us a lecture?

1. The plane is to land at 4.10 (When) 2. They are to hold a meeting in the hall. (Where) 3. The chairman is to address the meeting. (Who) 4. We are to

meet with him tomorrow. (When) 5. The museum is to open in two days. (When) 6. They are to have their exams on Monday. (who) 7. Lucy is to speak at the meeting. (Where) 8. He is to show the guests around. (Who) 9. Bob is to come on Sunday. (When) 10. The meeting is to last 2 hours. (How long)

**Ex. 2. Make the following sentences disjunctive questions. Answer the questions.**

1. The ship was to arrive at the port last night. 2. He is to make a report on the latest events. 3. These actors were to take part in the performance. 4. Mike was to be back in 3 days. 5. They are to discuss the present state of affairs. 6. She was to get some extra money for her work. 7. They were to work from 9 till 5. 8. I am to give this letter to Mr. Brown.

**Ex. 3. Change and explain the following sentences as shown in the model.**

Model: He was to come in the evening. (not to feel well)  
He was to come in the evening, but he didn't because he didn't feel well.

1. They were to go on a picnic on Sunday. (to rain) 2. Nancy was to go to the dentist that day. (to be detained at the office) 3. They were to ask Roger for dinner. (to leave the town) 4. I was to take part in the competition. (to sprain my ankle) 5. They were to go to the country by car. (to break) 6. They were to get to Detroit by the evening. (to have little petrol left) 7. Professor Simpson was to give us a lecture on French literature yesterday. (to be busy at the university) 8. The tourists were to visit the picture gallery last Thursday. (to be closed) 9. We were to spend the summer at the seaside. (not to be able to book accommodation in a hotel) 10. He was to see me at six. (to have an important meeting)

**Ex. 4. Explain the difference in meaning between the two sentences in the following pairs:**

1. a) The plane was not to take off at night as the weather was too bad. b) The plane was to have taken off at night, but the weather was too bad.
2. a) There was to be an interesting concert last night, but I didn't feel well and had to stay at home. b) There was to have been an interesting concert last night, but the singer fell ill and the concert had to be postponed.
3. a) The order came that we were not to leave the village before dawn. b) We were not to have left the village before dawn, but by the time the order came we were two miles away from it.

4. a) Roy was to make many friends in literary circles. b) Roy was to have made many friends in literary circles, but he failed.
5. a) He was to write a review to his fellow writer's book. b) He was to have written a review to his fellow writer's book, but he did not manage to do it.
6. a) He was not to criticize his friend's book. b) He was not to have criticized his friend's book, but he could not resist the temptation.
7. a) Roy was to get in touch with the editor. b) Roy was to have got in touch with the editor but he failed as the telephone was in disrepair.

**Ex. 5. Combine the modal verb *to be (to)* with the proper form of the infinitive in brackets.**

1. I stood at the window, looking at them disappear, and my heart kept repeating 'Good-bye!' I was not (to see) them for nearly five years.
2. You know Mako's Kraal ... on the other side there is land with water, that was the land Sam was (to buy). There they were (to live).
3. I was (to arrive) in Riga by the ten o'clock train, but I couldn't get a ticket for it and nobody met me when I came.
4. Remember that we are (to be) at his place not later than eight.
5. Why are you so late? Didn't you get my letter saying that we were (to meet) at 4?
6. There was a violent storm that night and the *Albatross* which was (to arrive) at the port in the morning had to drop anchor near an island a hundred miles off the port.
7. You were (to stay) at home but I see your felt boots caked with snow.
8. No need to worry about the children. They were (to pass) the night in the country.
9. Mike was (to break) the news to his mother. She must know all about it already.
10. It's through your fault that father is in a fit of sulks again. You weren't (to mention) your failure in his presence.
11. The painting he worked at was (to be finished) by Sunday.

**Ex. 6. Recast the following sentences using the modal verb *to be*.**

Model: They told us to leave Glasgow at 5 o'clock.

We were to leave Glasgow at 5 o'clock.

1. They promised to sign the contract last week.
2. He told us that he left on Monday.
3. We were told to finish our work in a week, but we could not do it.
4. He promised to bring our tickets at 5 o'clock.
5. They promised to show us this film in June.
6. I was told that my shoes would be ready in two days.
7. My husband told me to leave at 3 o'clock.
8. They planned to have the laboratory ready by May.
9. We decided to make our outing on Sunday.
10. She said that she would make this dress next day.
11. The teacher told us to hand in our copy-books next lesson.
12. My daughter promised to come to London in May.
13. They planned to take their examinations in

June. 14. He promised to come tonight. 15. We agreed that the one who came first would reserve seats for the rest of us. 16. Nobody met me at the station. I promised to arrive a day later and could not warn any of my friends of the change. 17. They asked to leave on Monday but because of two days delay with the visit we had to book tickets for Wednesday.

**Ex. 7. Respond to the following statements using *to be* + Perfect Infinitive.**

Model: A: What a nuisance! The article is still not translated.

B: Bill was to have translated it long ago. It's all his fault.

1. Mike is absent again. All the pupils are here. He is the only one missing. 2. I thought the taxi was already at the door and we could be going. 3. Why are you here? I thought you planned to stay overnight in the country. 4. Mary is late as always. If we wait for her much longer, we shall be late for the theatre. 5. Strange as it may seem, I called her up several times but did not find her in. 6. I did not expect to find you in town. I thought you had left for your country house. 7. What, you are still in your old quarters! High time you moved into the new house.

**Ex. 8. Ask questions to make sure that it was a planned action.**

Model: The delegation has not arrived yet. → The visit was delayed, perhaps. – Do you mean that the delegation was to have arrived already? – I do, but something may have happened and the visit was delayed.

1. The lecture on history didn't take place last week. 2. I haven't finished my course paper by the end of the term. 3. The secretary hasn't typed the report yet. 4. This problem has not been discussed at the conference. 5. Our monitor has not spoken to the dean yet. 6. This subject has not been included in the time-table. 7. Our country has not been represented at the conference. 8. This girl didn't apply for admission to our Institute. 9. These actors didn't take part in the concert. 10. The participants of the conference didn't discuss the agenda.

**Ex. 9. Read the following anecdotes about Mark Twain. Give its main points. Dramatize it.**

Mark Twain and a friend of his once went abroad on the same ship. When the ship was a few days out they were both invited to a dinner, and when speech-making time came, Mark Twain had the first chance. He spoke twenty minutes and made a great hit. Then it was his friend's turn.

'Mr. Toast-master and Ladies and Gentlemen', said Mark Twain's friend as he rose. 'Before this dinner Mark Twain and myself made an agreement to trade speeches. He has just delivered my speech, and I thank you for the



pleasant manner in which you received it. I regret to say that I have lost the notes of his speech and cannot remember anything he was to say'.

## Ought to

### Ex. 1. Comment on the meaning of the verb *ought*.

1. You are a big boy and you ought to look after your little brother when your mother is out. 2. I think you ought to write the answer at once. 3. They ought to have done all the exercises to this lesson already. 4. You ought to have finished all the arrangements for your trip. 5. They ought not to have told her about it. 6. Mary ought not to have packed her son's toys. He ought to do it himself. 7. You ought to have known that he usually leaves for his office at 8. 8. It is already 10 o'clock, you ought to go to bed. 9. They ought to have come long ago. I don't know what has happened to them. 10. You can't change anything; so you ought to put up with it. 11. He felt that he ought to do something about it without any delay.

### Ex. 2. Open the brackets using the appropriate form of the infinitive.

1. It is 6 o'clock. They ought (to leave) already. 2. You are a big girl and you ought (to tidy up) our room yourself. 3. It was he who ought (to arrange) their trip. But he failed to do it. 4. They ought (to warn) their mother that they would return home late. 5. The pupils ought (to keep) their classroom clean. 6. You ought (to apologize) for having been so rude to her. She is offended. 7. You may be sure that he will do what he ought (to do). 8. Why should I do what I ought (not to do). 9. You ought (to show) respect for old people. 10. She ought (to write) to her parents as soon as she arrived in Moscow. 11. You ought (to write) to your mother at least once a week so that she should not worry. 12. Lucy said, rather uneasily: 'Do you think you ought (to say) what you did about Emma marrying?' 13. He absolutely abhors visiting and thinks there ought (to be) a law against invitations that go beyond dinner and bridge. 14. 'I'm sure you ought really not (to come) at all, Mr. Crackenthorpe', said Miss Ellis. 'You look quite pulled down still'. 15. And here I've been keeping you awake. Oh, madam, you ought (to stop) me. 16. You ought (to be careful), Rosie, if you go saying things like that where people can hear you, they'll think you're against the war, you'll get into trouble.

### Ex. 3. Complete the following sentences.

1. In her correspondence with Manson Mrs Page concealed the fact that Dr. Page was not fit for work though she . . . . 2. Instead of saying those rude

words, which insulted your friends you ... . 3. You overlooked the question of vital importance and it caused us so much trouble. You ... . 4. Instead of tossing and turning through the long restless night you ... . 5. Instead of thrusting his trouble upon his friends he ... . 6. Instead of complying with that queer request ... . 7. Your friend knew that she was in the wrong but she persisted in arguing with us. She ... . 8. Instead of making fun of your friends you ... . 9. Instead of spending the whole day indoors the children ...

**Ex. 4. Supply the missing parts using *ought* + infinitive.**

1. A: Kitty looks out of sorts. She evidently wants a good rest.  
B: ... .  
A: She should try and combine education and recreation.  
B: ...
2. A: It was silly of me not to have joined your vocal group.  
B: ... .  
It is led by a very good musician.  
A: Can I do it now?  
B: ... .  
If you don't find it to your liking you can drop it.
3. A: I didn't like Mary's lesson. It was dull and monotonous.  
B: ... .  
A: I quite agree with you there. Visual aids would have helped her a great deal.  
B: ... .  
The discipline was slack and the children were inattentive.

**Ex. 5. Make up short dialogues containing the following statements.**

1. You ought not to have let your child miss school without a good reason.
2. You ought not to write so carelessly, no one can make head or tail of your handwriting.
3. The teacher ought to maintain the discipline in the class.
4. The teacher ought to have a good command of his subject.
5. We ought to give our children an all-round education.

**Ex. 6. Read this anecdote about Mark Twain. Dramatize it.**

Mark Twain was visiting one of his friends, and the host led the humorist into his library.

'There', he said, as he pointed to a bust of white marble. 'What do you think of that?' It was a bust of a young woman combing her hair – a graceful example of Italian sculpture.

Mark Twain looked at it for a moment – then said:

'It isn't true to nature'.  
'Why not?' asked his friend.  
'She ought to have her mouth full of hairpins'.

## Should / Ought to

**Ex. 7. Change the following sentences to express probability using the modal verbs *should* and *ought*.**

Model: I look all right with my hat on.  
I should (or ought to) look all right with my hat on.

1. This is the horse that will win. 2. My dentist is so busy he can't fit me in the end of the month. 3. They prefer him to do the job. 4. It's a valuable property, but it has suffered from neglect. 5. They dislike referring to that kind of thing. 6. Their way of life is the right one and they insist on criticizing everybody else's. 7. She enjoys all the attention, I think she likes being made a fuss. 8. He is a well-known scientist, so his opinion is reliable. 9. They left early, so they have arrived by now. 10. You are able to learn it in two weeks' time.

**Ex. 8. Make appropriate questions for the answers.**

1. They should not ask him questions about his private life. 2. I ought to visit my uncle next Saturday. 3. He ought to work hard to get good grades. 4. You should spend the summer at the seaside. 5. They should raise the question tomorrow. 6. Roger ought to stay with the Parkers. 7. She should go shopping on Sunday. 8. You should take the children to the Zoo. 9. They ought to be present at the meeting. 10. He should go to the library tomorrow.

## Should

**Ex. 1. Give advice in answer to the following statements.**

Model: I'm afraid I'll miss the train. (to take a taxi) → You should take a taxi.

1. I have a headache. (to take a walk) 2. She seems to forget about her promise. (to remind her) 3. I don't know what dress to put on. (to put on the one which becomes you) 4. I have a slight cough. (to smoke less) 5. She makes a lot of spelling mistakes. (to copy passages out of a book) 6. The child is afraid of so many people. (not to make noise) 7. I need this book. (to buy it) 8. I'm afraid I shan't be able to do it tomorrow. (to do today) 9. I have a sore throat. (to eat ice-cream) 10. It is cold today. (to put on a warm dress)

**Ex. 2. Give full answers to the questions below.**

1. What should a girl do if she wants to have her hair dressed? 2. What should you do if you want to have the linen washed? 3. What should your friend do if he wants to have his television set repaired? 4. What should you do if you want to have your room decorated? 5. What should you do if you want some photographs taken? 6. Where should you go if you want to have your hair cut? 7. What should your mother do if she wants to have her hair waved? 8. What should you do if you want to have your watch repaired? 9. What should girls do if they want to have their dresses made here? 10. What should you do if you want to have this prescription made? 11. What should you do if you want to have your exercises corrected? 12. What should he do if he wants to have his drawing framed? 13. What should she do if she wants to have her coat altered? 14. Where should she go if she wants to have her hair waved? 15. What should they do if they want to have the car brought round?

**Ex. 3. Express your criticism of the past action.**

Model: I didn't visit my parents in summer. → You should have visited your parents in summer.

1. I didn't use a dictionary while translating this article. 2. I made a lot of mistakes. 3. I didn't correct all the mistakes. 4. I didn't consult a doctor. 5. I didn't go to the dean's office. 6. I didn't take the temperature. 7. I didn't telephone her. 8. I didn't tell him the truth. 9. I didn't warn my friend. 10. I didn't buy that frock. 11. I didn't try it on. 12. I didn't make any suggestions. 13. I didn't support his proposal. 14. I didn't come in time. 15. I didn't write to him.

**Ex. 4. Complete the following sentences, giving advice, recommendations or expressing reproach.**

Model: Her mother wrote to her long ago and still she hasn't heard from her. (to answer the letter) → She should have answered the letter.

1. Peter fell ill and missed many lessons. (to help him to catch up with the group) 2. Ann has low marks in English. (to improve one's work) 3. My friend is eager to know more about English art. (to recommend some literature) 4. Nick is short-sighted and still he hasn't got glasses. (to consult a doctor) 5. Lena is not a backward student but her English is very poor. (to read more in order to enrich her English) 6. I'm expecting visitors tonight. (to buy some cakes, sweets and sandwiches)

**Ex. 5. Recast the following sentences so as to use the modal verb *should*.**

1. It's a pity you were beside yourself with anger. 2. I think you must keep an eye on her to know more about her. 3. I'm sorry you didn't get on with your friends. You were not right. 4. It's a pity you work in (by) fits and starts. 5. I have advised her to have the figures at her finger-tips (ends). 6. I don't think it was clever of them to argue with him. They were not right. 7. I think you'd better take the rough with the smooth. 8. I'm sorry the boy let himself in for it. 9. It's a pity you didn't call on your friend long ago. He is in a predicament. 10. I don't advise you to keep late hours. 11. I advise you not to stare at people like that. It's impolite. 12. I'd like you to do me a favour. 13. I don't advise you to insist on their putting up with it. It won't improve the situation.

**Ex. 6. Recast the following sentences, using the verb *should* to express surprise, indignation, joy, etc.**

1. They put off their meeting till Monday. 2. Peter feels ill at ease. 3. His child is in floods of tears. 4. Peter is so shy and awkward with you. 5. He is so stubborn. 6. Someone is asking for you downstairs. 7. The young school-mistress occupied Manson's thoughts insistently. 8. He refused to go to the cinema with us tonight. 9. They are planning to go to the country on Sunday, though the weather is awful. 10. You blame him, but it was not his fault. 11. He intends to buy this hat, but it does not match his suit. 12. He thought of going to the cinema. But my friend has changed his mind and insists on going to the park. 13. That stranger is casting curious glances at you. 14. Don't go to see this film. It is not worth seeing. 15. He keeps away from us. 16. He likes to laugh at other people's expense in an unpleasant manner. 17. She lets her children go to the forest alone. 18. She always blushes at the sight of this man. 19. He wears glasses though his eyesight is perfect. 20. He objects to sending their telegram.

**Ex. 7. Open the brackets using the appropriate form of the infinitive.**

1. He should not (to give) the choice – he should (to go) with you. 2. He should (to pass) the letter to her, as the letter was addressed to her. 3. You should (to take) more exercise to improve your pronunciation. 4. You should (to phone) them at once. Now it is late. 5. She shouldn't (to wear) the coat. It is warm today. 6. I shouldn't (to say) that, I am sure. 7. You should (to think) over this offer once more, before rejecting it. 8. This question should (to settle) long ago. 9. He should (to reject) the invitation. He was busy. 10. You should (to devote) much time to your studies. They are very important. 11. This sofa should (to take) away from here. It is too large for this room. 12. His offer should (to accept). 13. This work should (to praise). It's valuable. 14. The agreement should (to sign). 15. The question should (to

settle) without delay. 16. How should a woman (to act) when she discovers her husband is a bloody coward? 17. You should (to tell) me first – before notifying the police. 18. It was a mistake to have come; she knew all along it was a mistake. Should she (to go) back even now? 19. Jabavu is glowing with anger. It is he who should (to be asked), he is the older and the leader, and he can write. (Lessing) 20. Your father does not want to hamper your freedom. He thinks you should (to be allowed) to drive the car. 21. She can't be operated on now. It's too late. She should (to come) to me a year ago. 22. They discussed what mother and I should (to do) during the day ...

**Ex. 8. Open the brackets. Complete the sentences to justify your choice.**

1. You (should, shouldn't) take part in ... 2. He (should, shouldn't) have put up with her ... 3. You (should, shouldn't) believe it so far ... 4. They (should, shouldn't) have given it up ... 5. We (should, shouldn't) do her a favour ... 6. She (should, shouldn't) have expected her friend to do well at the examination ... 7. They (should, shouldn't) read more English books. 8. You (should, shouldn't) have believed that he would let himself in for ... 9. The girl (should, shouldn't) make such a fuss about it ... 10. He (should, shouldn't) have appeared out of the blue ... 11. You (should, shouldn't) be doubtful about it ... 12. They (should, shouldn't) have misunderstood this fact ... 13. I (should, shouldn't) have got into an unpleasant situation ...

**Ex. 9. Construct sentences with *should* about the situations presented.**

Model: Mary went to school yesterday feeling unwell. Should she have gone to school?

A: Should Mary have gone to school yesterday?

B: No, she shouldn't. She felt unwell.

1. We'll have to take our examinations in the nearest future. What should we be doing now?
2. Bob forgot to turn out the light before he left home. What should he have done before leaving?
3. Peter drove his car carelessly near a school yesterday. How should he have driven?
4. Nick accused Kate of boasting. But she is modesty herself. Should he have done it? If not, why?

**Ex. 10. Retell the following jokes using the modal verb *should*.**

1. Mother (at dinner):  
Peggy, darling, you shouldn't scratch your nose with your spoon.

- Peggy: Oh, mother, should I have used a fork?
2. Professor: Your paper should have been so written that even the most ignorant could understand it.  
Student (patiently):  
Yes, sir. What part didn't you get?
3. 'James, have you whispered today without permission?'  
'Only wunst'.  
'Leroy, should James have said 'wunst'?'  
'No'm he should have said 'twict'.'
4. Mistress: Can you explain why it is that every time I come into the kitchen I find you reading?  
New Maid: It ought to be those rubber heels of yours, mum.
5. Magistrate: What is the man charged with?  
Constable: He is a camera friend of the worst kind, sir.  
Magistrate: But he shouldn't have been arrested just because he has a mania for taking pictures.  
Constable: It isn't that, sir – he takes cameras.
6. 'I have a hair-raising story'.  
'You should tell it to some bald-headed man'.
7. 'Papa', said the doting mother. 'Robert's teacher says he ought to have an encyclopedia.'  
'Encyclopedia, my eye', grumbled the father. 'Let him walk to school like I did.'
8. The popular writer Edgar Wallace was once portraying to a friend the fabulous glories of the film industry. 'I write a scenario in a couple of days and get a fortune for it. You ought to try it'.  
'It's too baffling for me', his friend said ruefully. 'I was once asked to submit something to a film company. I sent them four scenarios – and got back nine'.

## Shall

### Ex. 1. Ask for instructions using the given word combination.

Model: to sit down → Shall I sit down? – Why not. (Do, please)

*Prompts:* to go straight up, to go and have coffee, to make a report, to come and see you again, to read a story to you, to tell everything, to open the window, to start reading, to sit by the fire, to have tea, to cross the street here, to tell mother about, to listen to music, to return the book immediately, to go to the cinema, to have a rest, to have a break.

**Ex. 2. Change the following sentences as in the model.**

Model: Let's buy some sweets. → Shall we buy any sweets? – Agreed.

1. Let's exchange stamps.
2. Let's go to the park.
3. Let's go to the circus.
4. Let's buy flowers.
5. Let's ring him up.
6. Let's swim in this river.
7. Let's visit my uncle.
8. Let's go round and see him.
9. Let's stop here.
10. Let's drop in this bookshop.

**Ex. 3. Express your determination or warning as in the model.**

Model: Shall I go there? → You shan't go there. It's dangerous. (It's not necessary)

1. Shall I cross the street here?
2. Shall I go downstairs?
3. Shall I pack your things?
4. Shall I leave tomorrow?
5. Shall I look through the papers?
6. Shall I see you off?
7. Shall I mention these facts?
8. Shall I give all the details?
9. Shall I tell this story to anybody?
10. Shall I ring him up?

**Ex. 4. Retell the following jokes using the modal verb *shall*.**

1. – I think I shall do a bit of gardening. Will you help me, Nora?  
– Of course, I will. Shall I put on my gardening boots?  
– Yes, do – and so will I.
2. – Oh, Harry, – will you, please, paint the roof of the shed? That really does make the garden look untidy.  
– It shall be painted – but not till next weekend.  
– And you shall have a glass of beer, when the tree is dug up. I'll bring it out to you.  
– That'll be very nice – I shall certainly be ready for it.
3. – Oh, Nora, here's a letter from old Bartle. He wants to come and stay for a week from Friday.  
– That will be nice, won't it? He's such a nice old dear.  
– He is a fussy old nuisance.  
– Now which room can he have? Oh, yes, he shall sleep in Robert's room, and Robert shall share with Peter. Peter, you will let Robert sleep in your room just for a few nights, won't you?  
– Oh, Mother, I don't want to share with Robert! He won't like it either.  
– Just while Mr. Bartle is here, you shall have your room to yourself as soon as he goes.  
– And shall he have his breakfast in bed every day?  
– I suppose I must do that for him. (Door bell) Will you see who that is at the door, Peter?  
– Yes, Mother, I will.



4. 'When we are married I must have three servants'.  
'You shall have twenty, dear, but not all at once'.
5. Recruit: Shall I mark time with my feet, sir?  
Lieutenant (sarcastically):  
Have you ever heard of marking time with your hands?  
Recruit: Yes, sir! Clocks do it.
6. – Oh, Peter is easy. We can give him a football.  
– Good; then he shall have a football.

## Will / Would

**Ex. 1. Change the following sentences using the polite forms *Will you ... or Would you mind ...*.**

Model: Help me to do this work. → Will you help me to do this work?  
(Would you mind helping me to do this work?)

1. Give me that book.
2. Switch on the light.
3. Drop my letter into the letter-box.
4. Wait a minute.
5. Explain the rule to me.
6. Help me to lift the bag.
7. See me off.
8. Speak louder.
9. Open the door.
10. Translate this story for me.
11. Have dinner with us.
12. Let's go for a walk.
13. Have a cup of tea.
14. Tell her about it.

**Ex. 2. Make up dialogues according to the model.**

Model: *A:* Would you like to see the chairman?

*B:* What did you ask me?

*A:* I asked you, if you would like to see the chairman?

1. Would you do me the honour of dining at my table?
2. Would you show us to our seats?
3. Would you learn about the cast of the actors?
4. Would you exchange opinions about the play?
5. Would you like to visit the St Petersburg's Russian Museum?
6. Would you do me a favour?
7. Would you put up with it?
8. Would you set your mind on getting it done on time?
9. Would you keep an eye on the child?
10. Would you have the matter out with her?
11. Would you see me home?
12. Would you mind waiting a little longer?

**Ex. 3. Use *will* to express your intention** a) to keep to the point; b) to get the bath ready; c) not to be home for supper; d) not to accept money from him; e) to break the engagement; f) to go out in the afternoon to a party.

Model: I will speak to Bunbury, Aunt Augusta.

**Ex. 4. Compose sentences with the words given below. Use the verb *will* to denote willingness, intention. Refer the situation to the past.**

Model: she, to wear such colours

She **will** wear such colours. – She **would** wear such colours.

1) I, to go there; 2) mother, to wear her hair like that; 3) she, to take all sorts of patent medicines; 4) that dog, to scratch the geraniums; 5) the children, to bring all this into the house; 6) I, to do it whatever you say.

**Ex. 5. Change the following sentences using *will* in the negative form.**

Model: The door doesn't open.

The door **won't** open.

1. My bag doesn't close. 2. She doesn't agree with anybody. 3. This child doesn't drink milk. 4. Your pen doesn't write. 5. The man doesn't talk with anybody. 6. The car doesn't start. 7. The machine doesn't work. 8. The boy doesn't do his homework. 9. The taxi-driver doesn't stop. 10. The traffic lights don't change. 11. The old lady doesn't answer my questions.

**Ex. 6. Change the following sentences using *would* in the negative form.**

Model: The boy didn't go to bed.

The boy **wouldn't** go to bed.

1. Tom didn't eat tomato soup. 2. The stamp didn't stick to the paper. 3. The doll didn't close its eyes. 4. Charles didn't write them a letter. 5. She didn't do what I asked her. 6. The bell didn't ring. 7. The drawer didn't open. 8. The girl didn't tell us why she was crying. 9. Eliza didn't say anything. 10. The radio set didn't work.

**Ex. 7. Make a statement about something not functioning the way it should. Use the following words. Refer the situation to the past.**

Model: the kettle, to boil

The kettle **won't** boil. – The kettle **wouldn't** boil.

1) the chair, to fold; 2) the pen, to write; 3) the engine, to start; 4) the key, to turn in the lock; 5) the figures, to add; 6) the words, to make sense; 7) the wood, to burn; 8) the sun, to rise; 9) the jelly, to jell; 10) the broken bone, to set properly.

**Ex. 8. Retell the following jokes using the modal verbs *will* (*would*).**

1. 'Dora, darling, will you marry me?'  
'No, but I'll always admire your good taste'.
2. 'Why did you break off your engagement?'  
'Mary wouldn't have me'.  
'Did you tell her about your rich uncle?'  
'Yes. She's my aunt now'.
3. A nobleman wished Garrick, the famous actor, to be a candidate for the representation of a borough in Parliament. 'No, my lord', said Garrick. 'I would rather play the part of a great man on the stage than the part of a fool in Parliament'.
4. – Harry, could you turn out your workroom? I've been meaning to ask you for days.  
– Yes, I will.

**Ex. 9. Comment on the following proverbs. Give their Latvian equivalents.**

1. If the mountain will not come to Mahomet, Mahomet must go to the mountain.
2. A drowning man will catch at a straw.

## Need

**Ex. 1. Change the following sentences expressing absence of necessity.**

Model: You must stay here till five.  
You needn't stay here till five.

1. He must be strict with the child.
2. Jane must wear her new dress.
3. The students must work in the library till six.
4. You must tell your brother all about it.
5. I must go shopping tomorrow.
6. She must go there on foot.
7. You must stay with the patient.
8. He must deliver the telegram tonight.
9. You must take an appointment with the doctor today.
10. They must stay with their relatives.
11. We must start for the station at once.
12. I must go to the market now.
13. He must take the examination tomorrow.

**Ex. 2. Express the absence of necessity by using the verb *need*.**

Model: They wasted money buying these books.  
Someone else had already bought some.  
They needn't have bought them at all.

1. I wonder why they ordered biscuits. They were quite unnecessary.
2. What was the point of their having them delivered? There was no need for it, was there?
3. I could never make out why they went in person. They

could just as easily have phoned. 4. I don't see why they commissioned the books. They could have been bought in the normal way. 5. Why did you bring that subject up? Educated people should be capable of being objective! 6. 'Why did you tell them absolutely everything?' 'Probably because I'm not the secretive type'. 7. 'Why did you have to be so amusing at my expense?' 'Can't you take a joke?' 8. I don't see why you couldn't have kept them in stock. There was no point in selling them off.

**Ex. 3. Complete the sentences.**

1. You needn't get up very early tomorrow because ... 2. We needn't wait for him, he ... 3. You needn't change for another line, you can ... 4. You needn't tell me about the film, I ... 5. Tom needn't buy this book, he ... 6. You needn't take me home, it's very late, I ... 7. The students needn't continue to read the novel, they ... 8. He need not stay in Riga till I finish my work, I ...

**Ex. 4. Open the brackets using the appropriate form of the infinitive.**

1. You needn't (to get up) so early, I can cook my breakfast myself. 2. We needn't (to wait) for them for two hours, they did not seem very eager to join us in our trip. 3. Nick needn't (to read) this novel, if he doesn't like it. 4. You needn't (to worry) on my account, I told you I could come home late. 5. You needn't (to answer) the question, if you don't know what to say. 6. I was afraid that he had lost my book, but he brought it yesterday, so I needn't (to worry).

**Ex. 5. Paraphrase the following, using the modal verb *need*.**

1. I see no reason why we should argue. 2. It was not necessary for her to carry the bags all by myself; there were porters at the station. 3. Is it so very necessary that you should go there at all? 4. There is no use worrying about her; she is quite able to take care of herself. 5. What's the use of reproaching yourself. 6. I don't think there is any need to help them. 7. It was quite unnecessary for you to do the work instead of him.

**Ex. 6. Insert *didn't need* or *needn't have* according to the sense. Remember that both presuppose absence of necessity to do something, but *needn't have* is used to show that you did it.**

1. You ... (to bring) the book. Didn't you know I had it? 2. I ... (to bring) the book because we always got it from the library. 3. We ... (to explain) it to him. He understood what had happened at once. 4. You ... (to explain) it to me, but since you did I shall try to calm him down. 5. I ... (to hurry),

since I had plenty of time before the departure. 6. You ... (to hurry). Now you will have to sit long waiting for the train to come. 7. You ... (to write) to Mary and (to summon) her to London. Someone had already broken the news to her. 8. You ... (to write) to Mary and (to summon) her to Riga. Now we shall have to refund her expenses. 9. She ... (to clean) the room and had less work that morning. 10. We ... (to be) so rude to him. I think we hurt him. 11. As it was fine when I woke up I ... (to take) my umbrella to work. 12. You ... (to lock) the door. Didn't you know mother was in? 13. I ... (to lock) the door because somebody else had already done so. 14. We ... (to wait) for her. She rang us up to say she wouldn't come. 15. We ... (to wait) for her because she never came. 16. I ... (to answer) the questions and it saved me a lot of time. 17. I ... (to answer) the questions. If I had known it, it would have saved me a lot of time. 18. We ... (to tell) him. He understood what had happened at first glance. 19. You ... (to tell) me, but since you have, I'll do what I think proper. 20. I ... (to ring) the bell, because the door stood open when I came to it. 21. I ... (to ring) the bell. The man was deaf and didn't hear it.

**Ex. 7. Retell the following jokes using the model verb *need*.**

1. Student: I am indebted to you for all I know.  
Professor: Oh, you needn't.
2. Father: I am obliged to punish you and it will pain me.  
Johnny: But, father, if you have done nothing wrong, why need you pain yourself?
3. First Doctor: You needn't have asked your patient what he had for dinner.  
Second Doctor: It's a most important question, for according to my patients' menus I make out my bill.
4. First Doctor: You needn't worry – you cured your patient.  
Young Doctor: But I don't know which of the medicines cured him!

## Dare

**Ex. 1. Complete the following sentences.**

1. I dare not speak at the meeting, because ... .
2. He doesn't dare to swim across the river, because ... .
3. I dare not go to school today after ... .
4. I don't dare to ring her up because ... .
5. I don't dare to wake him up now as ... .
6. How dare you neglect your duties, you ... .

**Ex. 2. Paraphrase the following sentences using the verb *dare*.**

1. You are impudent enough to speak with your mother so rudely. 2. I challenge you to tell the truth. 3. I haven't courage to reproach her for it. 4. I am not brave enough to speak to her about her daughter, she might get very angry. 5. How can you be so impudent as to sneak into his house in his absence? 6. How can you venture to refuse to take part in our work?

**Ex. 3. Respond to the following statements using *dare*.**

Model: This coal-miner tried to smoke in a mine.

How dare he do it!

1. Nick was rude to his father. 2. Peter has a weak stomach and he eats dried meat. 3. He wants to mount that wild horse. 4. I shall dive from the bridge into the river. 5. He looks very ill but doesn't call the doctor. 6. A night nurse slept on duty. 7. We shall not declare cigarettes when passing through the Customs. 8. It is no use advising him; he is too pig-headed. 9. Mother doesn't want to vaccinate her child. 10. The driver continued on his journey though the motor-car had not been repaired.

## Revision Exercises

**Ex. 1. Translate the following sentences paying attention to the difference between the modal verbs *can* and *may*.**

1. Sorry, sir, you may not smoke here. 2. May I have some more cheese? – Yes, you may. 3. It was so dark, we could see nothing. 4. They knew that at any moment he might be attacked by one of Shorty's gang. 5. Ginger was a bit young, although he could run very fast. 6. Val could not live without adventure. 7. I cannot waste time here. 8. We are going to act a play. I thought some of you might like to act it. 9. Grandpa somehow could make everybody have good manners! 10. Dear me! So he may be in the hands of the police! 11. Still, she's got money. She can live by herself. 12. 'Well, here's to your health and may all your troubles be little ones', cried Dad raising his glass. 13. She was so angry that her family could hardly recognize her. 14. He thought that perhaps he could tell his story to the owner of the bar. 15. 'But we need the money', she said to Ally, 'and if I stay at home so soon, I may lose my job'. 16. Ally told Brian about her disappointment, but he could not take it seriously. 17. Why, Ally, you may meet a Duke or someone grand and get married and be a great lady. 18. 'Can you play draughts?' – 'No, Grandpa'. 19. I was so unhappy that could not do my homework. 20. It might be interesting for you to know that I taught your mother. 21. He can't intimidate me, Lanny thought. 22. There may be things that you know which I do not. 23. Nothing can possibly go wrong if we

work together. 24. Of course, he may be terribly changed. 22. You can't make me write anything on a piece of paper. 26. He thought the place might suit me. 27. You can't deny that he's clever, a good deal cleverer than I am. 28. I think I may be of some use to you. 29. She might be in my sitting-room. 30. I could see he wasn't quite sure of me.

**Ex. 2. Fill in the blanks with *can (could)* or *may (might)*.**

1. When they told me I was cured and ... go, I ... tell you I was more afraid than glad. 2. His letter ... have given them the idea. 3. His knee touched the bottom. He crawled further and at last lay full length on the pebbles. He now felt so tired he ... not understand how a moment ago he ... have been capable of swimming. 4. You've done me a great service. I knew I ... trust you. 5. Her mother said she ... play with me if she wished. 6. He's a nice boy. I'm glad you brought him out here. We ... have some fun. 7. He looked at the lighted window of the cottage. He ... see into a kitchen where two women were sitting by the table drinking tea. 8. She has attractive eyes. There's something about them that holds you. She ... have been pretty once. 9. When he married her she ... not have been more than sixteen. 10. He boasted and told the most extraordinary stories which I'm sure ... not possibly have been true. 11. She ... not think what he was doing. Something ... have happened to him. 12. You ... not have proved that I wrote the letter because I didn't. 13. It never occurred to me that I ... get measles. 14. I was just going to tell you – because of the storm I ... not be home tonight. 15. That is exactly what he did say. But I won't talk any more about it. He ... not have been himself. 16. 'To my mind she is a beautiful woman'. 'Well, yes. But I don't see what you ... have found to say to her'. 17. He hurled the heavy thing down the stairs. It made an extraordinary noise in its descent and woke Joe sleeping in his pram. The only thing I ... say to that was: 'You ... have killed Joe'. 18. 'I see one of my statuettes has been broken'. 'I ... not think what ... have happened to it'. 19. He thought it likely that Blair ... have got away unnoticed. 20. It was dark and I ... only see the glimmer of his face. 21. You have acted very irresponsibly and you ... find yourself in serious trouble. 22. After all we don't even know if your sister is proposing to stay in London. She ... be just passing through on her way to somewhere else. 23. One ... not get anything done nowadays. 24. 'Come inside in front of the fire where you ... warm up', she said quickly. 25. But I really feel that the late Mr. Evans ... not have been a nice man. 26. Listen. I know I ... be making a fool of myself, but then again, I ... be not. 27. I confessed that I ... not swim unless somebody held me. 28. She was smartly, quietly dressed, and ... have been taken for a clever business woman. 29. It was one of those days when nobody ... tell whether it was going to rain. 30. I was driving along when I

spotted a telephone box and thought I ... as well give you a call. 31. Jeff said, 'Why on earth did Ken say he shot that dog? He ... not possibly have done it'. 32. I don't know why he did it. He lost his wife lately. That ... have been it. 33. 'Aunt Mary said she hadn't seen him'. 'She ... have been lying. Perhaps your father asked her to say he wasn't there'. 34. I'm tired of listening to him tell me why it ... not be done. 35. I ask then, Mr. Morley, what you were doing? 36. I wished to be rid of my companion, and said, 'Thank you. I ... look after myself now'. 37. I thought you'd be staying in town for a night at least; and we ... have had a dinner and theatre. 38. We shall require, Mr Grey, to have a copy of this story. How soon ... you provide this? 39. Mrs Castle looks familiar to me. Where ... I have met her?

**Ex. 3. Open the brackets using the corresponding form of the infinitive.**

- A. 1. He could (to see) that everything in the kitchen was in perfect order. 2. May apron (to wash) in hot water? 3. She could not (to look after) children before, she doesn't know anything about it. 4. May I (to have) another cup of coffee? My husband and I are fond of coffee. 5. He said I might (to go shopping) if I finished my task. 6. You may (to fill) my bag to capacity, I am strong enough to carry it. 7. Who could (to think) that he was so naughty. We always believed him to be a very good child. 8. They cannot (to shoot) the documentary film now, because they are busy studying the material for shooting it. 9. Could they (to go) on an outing on such a nasty day? I think they have not gone to the country and you will find them at home. 10. Can he (to reject) their proposal to join them in their journey to the South? I don't think so, you have misunderstood something. 11. How can she (to ski) now? It is already dark. She might (to lose) her way. 12. You cannot (to intimidate) me, I know my right very well. You will be able to sack me at the very worst.
- B. 'Dear Edward, I think we were wise to part. We were too unsuited to one another, and our difficulties could only (to increase). I see that if we had continued to live together our quarrels might (to increase) perpetually. It is horrible to back upon those vulgar brawls. I cannot (to understand) how you could (to utter) such things... Perhaps it might (to be) different if we had had children; they might (to form) between us a truer link, and perhaps in the delight of them I could (to forget) my impracticable dreams. But fate was against us ... If you had asked me not to go, if you had ever showed me smallest sign of regretting my departure, I think I might (to break down). Yes, I can (to tell) you now that I could (to give) anything to stay. But now the worst is over, I have taken the step and shall adhere to what I have done. I think I had better not see you at all events for some time...'



**Ex. 4. Paraphrase the given sentences, using the modal verbs *can, may, must*.**

1. It is quite possible that the performance is over as there are many people leaving the theatre. 2. The performance was evidently over as many people were leaving the theatre. 3. a) I don't believe that he said it. b) Is it possible that he should have said it? 4. a) I think they knew everything about it. b) I am sure they knew everything about it. 5. I am almost sure that she did not do anything of the kind. 6. a) Is it possible that they should have refused to help you? b) It is possible that they have refused to help him. c) It is impossible that they should have refused to help you. 7. a) Perhaps it's all true, I am not sure. b) Perhaps it was true, I am not sure. 8. a) There is probably some misunderstanding. b) There was probably some misunderstanding. 9. a) Really, you don't mean it? b) Really, you didn't mean it? c) Do you really mean it? 10. There is no doubt that it was all prepared beforehand. 11. a) Is it possible that they have already left? b) It is impossible that they should already have left. c) It is possible that they have already left. 12. a) I don't believe that they did not recognize you. b) It is likely that his friends helped him; his English is quite decent now. 13. My students are certainly at a lecture now. 14. Is it possible that this old man is your brother? 15. The message was evidently delivered in time as we received an immediate answer. 16. Is it possible that you should not remember our talk?

**Ex. 5. Fill in the blanks with *can, may or must*.**

1. 'Will you know where to go?' 'Yes, thank you. I ... always ask my brother'. 2. 'Didn't she hear our shouting?' 'She says she heard nothing'. 'She ... have wandered a long way'. 3. What ... he have meant when he said it? 4. He hesitated and said, 'I ... go to South America. As a tea planter'. I said, 'I ... be wrong, Jason, but I don't think they grow tea in South America'. 5. He ... have flown off after he dropped us. He ... not land here. Not in a plane with wheels. 6. 'I'd give anything to meet that fellow'. 'We ... see what ... be done'. 7. Cindy ... have laughed aloud. Instead, she nodded. 8. You ... hardly have been more surprised than I was. 9. The old man cupped his ear in his palm. 'I think I ... be getting deaf. I ... not hear you'. 10. 'There was someone on the phone for you', he said. 'Oh, who?' 'I don't know, he didn't say. Some man'. 'It ... have been Mike'. 'I know Mike. It wasn't Mike'. 'Oh. Then I ... not think who it ... have been'. 11. Mr. Fox ... not come. He sent me to represent him. 12. I went straight from the station to the club and played billiards. It ... have been after eleven when I reached the flat. 13. Oh, you ... drink things steaming! ... you eat eggs with the shell on, too? 14. She was beginning to want to ask him in but she knew that she ... not do it yet. 15. It's a most interesting story. He ... not possibly have invented

it. You ... have told him something. 16. I've other things to attend to which ... be put through immediately. 17. I admire your mother's looks. She ... have been a lovely girl. 18. The apples are very good. You ... eat them all. 19. My wife ... leave the hospital in a week's time. 20. My wife ... to leave the hospital a few days ago. 21. I'm trying to think where he ... have gone. 22. Of course it occurred to me that if he had found the watch as he said, it ... have been lying in the garden for more than a year. 23. He began absently to eat one of the buttered biscuits. He'd lose his appetite if his wife didn't hurry up. She ... be talking to Frau Schmidt. 24. A day or two later Mrs Strickland sent me a note asking if I ... go and see her that evening after dinner. 25. 'I don't know why he did it'. 'It ... have amused him.' 26. 'You know, I'm a bit of a writer myself in a small way.' 'What are you writing? A novel?' 'Oh, come off it. I ... not write a novel. No, it's a short of history of the regiment, as a matter of fact.' 27. 'He's up in Barbie's room. He's decorating it with shells. He ... have brought in a ton'. 28. 'She's gone out. Something awful ... have happened'. 'How ... she have got out? The door is locked'. 29. I'm not going to tell him that he ... not do any building here. 30. They say the driver ... have been going fifty miles round that blind corner, for the body to have been thrown and injured like it was. 31. She looked unusually pale and gloomy. I wondered what ... have upset her. 32. '... you drive a car, Mooey?' 'Yes, indeed I ...', he answered. 33. You ... be very prosperous, Eustace, to own a car like that. 34. Obviously Haviland had worked late night before, as he ... have gone for several night in a row, because he looked drawn and pale. 35. The water of the pool ... have been heated for it steamed gently in the beams of the lamps. 36. Mr Hardy takes a lot of aspirin. He ... have had at least twelve tablets during the day. 37. The man danced very well. He ... have spent hours taking lessons, Jack thought. 38. 'At least I want to keep my mind occupied'. 'You ... get a good book and read it'. 39. We ... not exaggerate the situation. 40. 'I thought the English were great lovers of dogs'. 'We think American love dollars but there ... be exceptions'.

**Ex. 6. Re-word the following sentences using *can, may or must* in them.**

1. I don't think he did it all by himself. 2. Perhaps you're right. 3. It is possible that they forgot it in the car. 4. Is it really true? 5. I don't believe he has been meaning to do it. 6. It is impossible that he should have refused your request. 7. Evidently he has not read the book. 8. I wonder where it is that you met him. 9. I'm certain that he has heard the gong. 10. It was some special occasion. I'm sure. 11. He looks wet and muddy. I'm sure he has been fishing. 12. No doubt, she is out shopping. 13. I wonder what it is that you have brought in that box. 14. It's possible that he doesn't know we are

here. 15. Is it possible that he is giving a course on the Renaissance at the University? 16. It is possible that the news is being broadcast on all the channels. 17. I'm certain they didn't take notes of the meeting. 18. Is it possible that we are out of wrapping paper? 19. It is possible he will again forget to rule a margin down the left side. 20. 'I don't now see him driving his car. Is it possible that something has happened?' 'Evidently his car is undergoing repairs'. 21. It is just impossible for you to get this thing done so soon. 22. I wonder what it is that he is doing in there. 23. Then the firing began again. This time it was impossible for it to be more than a mile away. 24. Let's give her a call again. It is possible that she was asleep and didn't hear the telephone. 25. You have used up all the money I gave you, I suppose.

**Ex. 7. Explain the meanings and forms of *have to* and *be to* in the following sentences.**

1. I **had to** have someone to show me the way from the station. 2. We **were to** act as guides to the party. 3. 'Guess what!' 'I can't guess. You'll **have to** tell me'. 4. Now will you please show me the room where I **am to** work. 5. Now I've **had to** listen to a lot of lying. And I never watch faces. I look at hands and listen very carefully to the tone and tempo of speech. 6. The children **are not to** touch anything in the room. 7. There was a special order that no one **was to** come to the station to see the battalion off. 8. But I've **been having to** give a lot of thought recently to my feelings toward you. 9. It was the first and the last ceremony I **was to** see. 10. 'What **do you have to** do to earn so much money?' Barber asked. 11. He **was to** have had a music lesson in the morning but the teacher called up to cancel it. 12. I **didn't have to** turn around to know they were coming down the street. 13. He looked about him for his daughter but she **was not to** be seen. 14. I **was having to** feel my way.

**Ex. 8. Turn the following affirmative sentences containing *have to* into negative and interrogative ones.**

1. He has to light a fire. 2. They had to change their shoes. 3. I shall have to buy a new pair of gloves. 4. She has to go home early. 5. He had to give it back. 6. She'll have to come again.

**Ex. 9. Insert the verb *to be (to)* or *to have (to)* in the necessary tense form.**

1. I wondered what ... to happen to us. 2. It looks like raining. You ... to take your raincoat. 3. We agreed that the one who came first ... to reserve seats for the rest of us. 4. Nobody met me at the airfield as I ... to have arrived a day later and could not warn any of my friends of the change. 5.

He always puts off doing what he ... to do until it ... to be done. 6. We ... to leave on Monday, but because of a two days' delay with the visas we ... to book tickets for Wednesday. 7. There is nothing strange in what he did. It ... to be expected. 8. It was too late to change the plan, and it ... to remain as it was. 9. You ... not to tell him about it if you don't want to. 10. You ... not to tell him anything about it before you get further instructions. 11. They hoped to spend the summer together, but that ... not to be. 12. ... I to do it all by myself? 13. When no food ... to be had he seemed capable to do without. 14. At night the ship put in at a small port where they ... to load three hundred bags of coffee. 15. They ... to light a fire to cook their supper. 16. He set off for the school where he ... to write examinations for entry to the University. 17. When I got home I found I had left my olive oil in front of the notice-board and I ... to return in the afternoon to collect it. 18. He made all arrangements for the marriage, which ... to take place on the day of his mother's arrival. 19. The Finnish woman who ... to work for Finch had not arrived yet. 20. She knew there would be no more vacations for her sons. But she ... (not) to say it. They knew that as well as she. 21. Eden went to the wood where he ... to meet his brother for a ride. 22. Uncle Nick's things ... to be moved out of his room so that it could be re-let. 23. For the next few weeks I ... to stay in bed. Everyone came to visit me, and brought me presents, and I ... (not) to do the cooking. 24. Early in January Maurice returned to Ireland and his brother accompanied him. He ... to remain with him till spring. He then ... to go to the Slade School of Fine Arts in London. 25. They went to inspect Finch's new house. Finch said that only the last touches ... to be added there and he ... to move into it quite soon. 26. That day, however, I had a pupil waiting for an English lesson and I ... to cut my visitor short.

**Ex. 10. Fill in the blanks with *to be (to)*, *to have (to)* or *must*, using the correct form of the infinitive.**

1. I did not know who ... (to be) my travelling companion. 2. According to the state plan, many new dwelling house ... (to build) this year. 3. We ... (to work) hard to achieve good results. 4. 'I think we ... (to drop) anchor in that bay until the storm quiets down', the captain said to his mate. 5. I ... (to say) your behaviour has been far from straightforward. 6. 'Mabel has gone', Lanny said in a flat, impersonal voice. The old woman went back to her chair and sat down heavily. 'It ... (to be). Where did she go, son?' 7. 'Have you been studying much law lately?' I asked, to change the subject. 'Oh, Master Copperfield', he said with an air of self-denial; 'My reading ... hardly (to call) study'. 8. *Sartorius*. If I give in now I ... (to give in) always. 9. *Mrs. Pearce*. What ... (to become) of the girl? ... she (to pay) anything? 10. This is serious; you ... (not to joke) about it. 11. 'It is eight o'clock. The children

... go to bed', Mr Hudson said to the nurse. 12. She ... go to bed at eight o'clock to be up in time for the first train. 13. At this boarding school the children ... go to bed at eight o'clock. 14. 'I've told my husband he ... (not) smoke in the drawing-room'. 'And I ... (not) tell my husband such things; he's a born gentleman'. 15. He ... stay the night with us. I won't let him drive to the country in this rain. 16. He ... stay the night with us because he has missed the last bus. 17. He ... stay the night with us and tomorrow he sets off on his tour to Europe. 18. We ... begin as early as possible or we shan't finish it today. 19. I ... start on my new job on Monday. 20. You ... take the dog away. I won't have it here any longer. 21. They ... take the dog along with them because there is no one who could look after it. 22. She ... learn to do things for herself. I refuse to help her in future. 23. What a pity you ... go. I know it's time for you to catch your train. 24. I ... be off. I want to go to bed. 25. You ... do your choice now, and she ... do hers when she comes in. 26. My mother says that I ... (not) be out after eleven o'clock, but I ... (not) hurry home because she herself is out playing bridge. 27. My bike is under repair and I ... walk here this morning. 28. My bike was under repair and I ... collect it that afternoon. 29. My bike is under repair and I ... have collected it yesterday. 30. He told me that I ... (not) repeat what I had heard. 31. He told me that I ... (not) use words, which I didn't know. 32. He told me that I ... learn by heart some twenty lines every day to know English well.

**Ex. 11. Fill in the blanks with either *should* or *must*. Translate into Latvian.**

1. a) You ... have spoken to him already. I see you know everything. b) You ... have spoken to him of the matter. Why keep him in the dark? 2. a) They ... have studied the subject more thoroughly; they will regret it later on. b) They ... have studied the subject thoroughly; they answered every question. 3. a) You ... have ignored the traffic regulations. That's why you were fined. b) You ... have followed the traffic regulations, then you would not have been fined. 4. a) He ... have forgotten to send them a telegram. b) He ... have remembered to send them a telegram. 5. a) I ... have taken Grandfather's spectacles. I cannot see anything through them. b) I ... have taken my opera-glasses. I don't see anything.

**Ex. 12. Explain the meaning of *ought to* and *should* in the following sentences.**

1. I think I **ought to** let your parents know we are here. 2. You **should** have gone to the concert. Why **should** you miss the music? 3. I think I **ought to** put all my cards on the table. 4. It's late. You **should** go to bed. 5. **Oughtn't** you **to** be more careful? 6. 'How can you know what his

feelings are?' 'I **ought to** know, for he's always telling me about them'. 7. It was surprising that they **should** have met at all. 8. He remembered that he **should** not smoke unless invited to do so. 9. When Charles saw Ann playing tennis, he came up and said: 'Are you sure you **ought to** be doing that?' 10. The responsibility is entirely mine. I acted very wrongly indeed. I **ought not to** have let this relationship start. 11. 'When is he going back?' 'How **should** I know?' 12. Mrs Murrey will be moving into the new house next month. It **ought to** be less bleak for her. 13. 'Meg is in town shopping'. 'Who took her in?' 'Renny drove her to the train. He **should** be back at any moment'. 14. George did not see why he **should** not discuss the matter with his chief.

**Ex. 13. Use the required form of the infinitive after *ought to* and *should*.**

1. But we ought (to have) your brother here, to tell us exactly how far we can go. 2. Tea is between half-past five and six, and it should (to be) ready now. 3. He couldn't see anything. He thought that he ought (to bring) a torch. 4. Should the baby (to play) with a box of matches? 5. If you're in love it ought (to make) you happy. You ought (to laugh). 6. The doctor said it was appendicitis and she ought (to operate) on. 7. You should (to see) him yesterday on horseback. 8. One day the headmaster came on Jack, who should (to sweat) on the sports ground, sitting comfortably in a gardener's shed reading a book and eating a large piece of cocoanut ice. 9. 'Your father and I should (to arrange) everything before I came here', he said. 10. Oughtn't you (to answer) that letter now? 11. Where is his car? He shouldn't (to leave) it unattended. 12. He drove at great speed. He knew that about this hour the guests should (to arrive) at his house. 13. 'Well, I'm very glad to know at last what it was all about'. 'You ought (to tell) before'. 14. Then he should (to laugh), but instead he heard himself saying: 'Everything you say is quite true'. 15. Anything we can do to clear up this miserable affair ought (to do). 16. 'I don't think he had the least idea of what I meant'. 'You should (to be) more explicit, my dear'.

**Ex. 14. Use *should* or *had (to)* with the correct form of the infinitive in brackets.**

1. We ... (to call) on him yesterday, but we were too busy as we ... (to attend) an extra meeting. 2. I ... not (to tell) him this news; he was so much upset, but I really ... (to do) so, for the circumstances demanded that. 3. You ... (to see) him dance! You have missed a lot. I ... (to take) you to the concert. 4. It was very hard work but we ... (to do) it. 5. The mother ... (to punish) the boy severely to make him understand he was not right. The boy may repeat the same thing again. 6. Although it was very painful for

the mother but she ... (to punish) the boy. 7. He was out when we came, and we (to wait) for over an hour. 8. It was raining hard. We (to wear) our raincoats. 9. I (to take) a taxi, otherwise I should have missed the train. 10. You walked all the way here carrying this heavy suitcase. You (to take) a taxi. 11. They won't be able to buy anything but lemonade on the train. You (to give) them some sandwiches at least. 12. Mother was coming to dinner, so I (to bake) her favourite cake. 13. You knew I was bringing people to dinner. You (to bake) a cake. 14. She's quite an authority. You (to ask) her. 15. I couldn't stand that noise any longer. I (to go out) and tell them to stop. 16. How can you work in that noise? You (to tell) the children to stop.

**Ex. 15. Fill in the brackets with *ought*, *to be (to)* or *to have (to)*.**

1. Don't contradict her, you ... to respect her age. 2. She is not a bad sort, if somewhat capricious; so you sometimes ... to put up with her whims. 3. The situation grew awkward. He felt that something ... to be done, or else the party would break up; so he ... to say a few conciliating words to put the guests at their ease. 4. He was boiling with rage, but he ... to control his feelings not to give himself away. 5. I thought I ... to do something to return their hospitality. 6. Not a living thing ... to be seen. 7. Why do you ask my opinion, you have been in the business much longer, you ... to know better. 8. You are a father, you ... not to neglect your duties to your children. 9. According to the rules of the game a football player ... not to touch the ball with his hands. 10. He ... to have taken the floor and spoken in favour of the proposal. 11. Ring me up at 6. The situation ... to clear up by then.

**Ex. 16. Fill in the blanks, choosing the correct modal verb from those in brackets (use both if possible).**

1. Your questions surprise me, you ... (to know) this [ought, must]. 2. Children ... (to obey) their parents [must, should]. 3. Though it is a very unpleasant mission, I feel I ... (to tell) you the truth [should, ought]. 4. Why ... I (to know) where he is? [should, ought]. 5. Let's tell him all as it is. He ... (to understand) [must, ought]. 6. You ... (to apologize) when you saw that his feelings were hurt [must, ought]. 7. You ... (not to eat) so much bread; you will gain weight, which is not good for your heart [must, ought]. 8. She ... (not to speak) about such things in the child's presence. Now you see the result [must, ought]. 9. I ... (to know) that it might come to that [should, ought]. 10. If they had been warned in time, they ... (to be) here by now [must, ought].

**Ex. 17. Use *should* or *need* with the correct form of the infinitive in brackets.**

1. I am very sorry I ... not (to bother) you with this trifle. 2. You ... not (to come) so early, now you will have to wait. 3. You ... not (to give) the child so much money. It will spoil him. 4. You ... not (to return) the money so soon. I could have waited. 5. You ... not (to help) him with this work. He could have managed it himself.

**Ex. 18. Replace the infinitive in brackets by *should*, *need*, *have* + infinitive.**

1. You (not to go out) in this rain, now you have a cold in your head. 2. But, darling, I have a copy of my own, you (not to bring) me another one. 3. It was Sunday, and I (not to go) to the office. 4. Everything's all right. You see you (not to worry). 5. You are out of breath. You (not to run), you know how bad it is for you. 6. It was really warm, and we (not to wear) our heavy coats. I was so glad. It made all the difference. 7. You (not to tell) her about it. Now she is sure not to sleep the whole night worrying. 8. You (not to go) with her. She knows the way perfectly well. 9. You (not to have put) so much sugar in the custard. No one will be able to eat it. 10. You (not to give) them any lunch. They can get coffee and sandwiches on the train.

**Ex. 19. Determine the meaning of the modal verbs *shall*, *will* (*would*). Translate into Latvian.**

1. People will say anything, won't they, when they want to prove they are right? 2. 'There were a great many meteorites', said Mary to anyone who would listen. 'The Earth must just be coming into the summer shower of them'. 3. 'Shall I tell you what I think of that man? I think he is slightly sinister', Madge said. 4. Now, Mr. Cleary, would you search your memory and begin with the very first thing that happened on the morning of the day you met Wissey Jones? 5. 'All right, Ben', said Maxim. 'Robert shall take you back home. And no one will put you in the asylum, don't be afraid'. 6. 'Would you say you were a fulfilled person?' Norman asked. 7. 'The English have no respect for their language, and will not teach their children to speak it', wrote B. Shaw. 8. 'What a doctor wants', I said, 'is practice. He shall get me. He will get more practice out of me than out of seventeen hundred of ordinary patients with only one or two diseases each'. 9. Can I use your pen? Mine won't write. 10. The old man did his utmost to show her the folly of her course. But she would not be persuaded. 11. The next morning we would read that it was going to be a 'warm, fine to set-fair day; much heat', and we would dress ourselves in flimsy things, and go out, and, half an hour after we had started, it would commence to rain hard, and a bitterly cold wind would spring up, and both would keep steadily for the



whole day, and we would come home with colds and rheumatism all over us, and go to bed. 12. 'Shall Ivor take the car?' she asked. 13. They will sit silently without exchanging a single word. 14. 'Will you do me a favour?' she asked imploringly. 15. If you will stay, I'll run up and telephone your son about it. 16. Julio Moreno would sit for hours in silence on the day when the wind blew continuously from the sea.

**Ex. 20. Fill in the blankets with *shall* or *will* in the correct form.**

1. 'No harm ... be done to your child. I ... see to it', the doctor tried to sooth the mother. 2. If you ... not take any steps you ... never get rid of the malady. 3. May I go on with the work or ... I wait for further instructions? 4. He ... sit for hours reading, paying no attention to what was going on around him. 5. ... I help you with the work or will you manage it yourself? 6. Don't worry, everything ... be arranged as you want, I promise you. 7. We tried to persuade him, but he ... not listen to our arguments. 8. We waited for two hours, but the rain ... not stop. 9. I wish to ask a few questions, and shall be very much obliged if you ... answer them. 10. But remember this: what I can't have, no one else ... . Do you understand? No one else! 11. *Trench*. I've a good mind never to speak to you again. *Blanche*. You ... not-not ever. I ... take care of that. 12. He ... always say something which makes us laugh. 13. He put the money in his pocket, and kindly told me not to make myself uneasy; he ... take care it ... be all right. 14. I tried to persuade him to return to the village as it was dangerous to remain in the jungle after nightfall, but he ... not listen to what I said. 15. Every night whether it was early or late he ... go into his mother's bedroom and tell her about the interesting things that had happened to him during the day. 16. 'What ... we do? She asked. 'The door ... not open. It is evidently locked. Where ... we spend the night?' 17. 'Boys ... be boys', the old lady said with a sigh. 18. The tea is hot and strong. Or ... you prefer to have a cup of coffee? 19. '... you wait in the library, sir? Sir Reginald will be down in a few minutes', said the secretary, a young man of about twenty-five whose face was half-hidden behind huge horn-rimmed spectacles. 20. Whenever an emergency arises Dr. Ross ... take charge and things ... settle satisfactory. 21. '... you mind my smoking here?' the new passenger asked. But nobody... answer his polite question. 22. '... you please step into the room, sir? The manager would like to have a talk with you', the clerk said to Albert Foreman. 23. 'You ... not behave like this in the presence of my guests', his father said angrily. 'You ... stay in your room and you ... not come out until all of them have left'. 24. She promised him a dollar for carrying her baggage and then ... not pay. 25. ... we get started, gentlemen? 26. We should be so grateful to you, if you ... find us a taxi. 27. 'Come at once', he said. 'I can't explain it on the telephone, but you ... hear everything directly from me'.

**Ex. 21. Fill in the blanks with the verbs *will, shall, would, should* in positive or negative form.**

1. You ... have the book next week. 2. I ... listen to such foolish talk. 3. Mary, ... you marry me? – Yes, I ... . 4. ... I tell our friends about our engagement? 5. I'm feeling cold, ... you close the window, David? 6. ... you have this cake, Mary? 7. ... you go to the cinema with me tomorrow afternoon, Mary? 8. Are you going to the theatre this week, David? – Yes, I am. ... you come with me? 9. You've got a bad cough, David. – Yes I often get coughs in the spring. – What can you expect? You ... go out without an overcoat, however cold the weather is. 10. Oh, David, make your dog stop barking, please. – Quiet, Trixie! Be quiet! She ... obey me. – Then take her out, please. 11. Can you lend me ten shillings? – Yes, David. Here you are. – Thank you, Mary. You ... have it back tomorrow. – I ... remind you about it, if you forget. 12. What are you doing on Sunday after breakfast? – Oh, I ... be taking the dog for a walk. – ... you take me with you?

**Ex. 22. Determine the meaning of the modal verbs *need* and *dare*.**

1. 'Mrs. Pierce, you needn't order the new clothes for Eliza. Throw her out', said Higgins. 2. I don't think we need give her any more of our attention. 3. I was doubtful of my reception, but I need have had no misgivings. He came forward to meet me, hand outstretched, a sunny smile lighting up his face. 4. 'How dare you come here and attempt to blackmail me?' Higgins asked Doolittle. 5. 'You needn't go to the Stag', said the landlady. 'We can put you up for the night here'. 6. Anyone who knows canine nature need hardly be told that by this time all the dogs in the place were fighting as if their hearths and homes depended on the fray. 7. George says he does not think I need trouble myself on the subject of food as I'll get more than my due. 8. 'The matter is of no importance, I daresay', he volunteered. 9. 'Need we go into all that again?' she asked irritably. 10. 'You needn't have brought so many clothes. We don't entertain much here', said Mrs. Finch. 11. I have never dared talk with him about his late wife. 12. The roads are so bad that we don't dare to go out much after dark. 13. You needn't go so early, need you? I'd like to have a talk with you. 14. I need hardly say that your help will be appreciated.

**Ex.23. Comment on the sentences given below. Explain the points of difference. Make your own sentences after this pattern.**

- A. 1. Bob must have failed the exam. He has been working by fits and starts.  
2. Bob may have failed the examination. He never impressed me as a bright boy.  
3. Bob can't have failed the examination. He's quite at home in English.

4. Bob couldn't have possibly failed the examination. He's such a conscientious student.
- B.
1. They couldn't have gone to Spain by sea! She's a poor sailor.
  2. They should have gone to Spain by sea. It was easy to get accommodation.
  3. They may have gone there by sea. Perhaps they made reservations in proper time.
  4. They can't have gone to Spain by sea. The season is in full swing and it is impossible to book a passage.
- C.
1. Jane can't have been detained at school. We left together an hour ago.
  2. Jane may have been detained at school. She often has to stay behind after classes.
  3. Jane couldn't have been detained at school. I believe I was the last to leave.
  4. Jane ought to have been detained at school. The teacher wanted the class to help him prepare things for the party.

**Ex. 24. Use modal verbs and the appropriate form of the infinitive. Retell the extract.**

Then, as though her mind had been struck by a delicate hammer that jarred her sensibilities into abrupt awareness, she thought: something ... (to be wrong)! He ... (to be home)!

She lay still. What ... (to happen)? ... she (to be) anxious? 'But it's so late!' She answered herself. Princey never came home from his Sunday meetings much after midnight.

And he had said that he would return early that night.

The church bell struck twice, telling her that it was already two. She had forgotten that their clock was a little slow, and somehow the added minutes seemed to make his absence more pronounced. Of course the auto ... (to break down), she thought. Or ... they (to have) an accident? Somewhat tensely she argued against that. If they had had, the police would have notified her, Princey always kept an identification card in his wallet. But what ... it (to be) then? If only people had telephones! It ... (to be) a matter of a minute to clear things up by calling Jess or William Carmichael.

If he came now, she told herself pettishly, and merely explained that he had been out gassing somewhere, she would throw the kettle of hot water in his face. How ... he (to upset) her like this?

The church clock struck once for the quarter hour. She ... no longer (to evade) the conviction that something ... (to happen) to him. She began to dress. Why ... she (to sit) at home, worrying, when she ... (to go) over there and find out. It ... (to be) almost two-twenty. She ... (to hurry). If she should miss that bus, there ... not (to be) another until three o'clock. (After A. Maltz).

**Ex. 25. Recast the following situations into dialogues using modal verbs.**

1. You would like to go to the theatre tonight. An interesting show is on. Your friend supposes that the house is already sold out. You don't think it very likely. The show has already had a long run. You hope that a couple of tickets will be available.
2. Bob sings so well that you are sure he has had a good training. You suppose that he has been a member of your Club's vocal group for several years. Your friend protests saying that he has never taken singing seriously. He goes in for sports and it is hardly possible for a student to combine both with studied successfully.
3. Peter is laid up with the flu again. Nina has a feeling that he caught cold in the cloak-room. There is always a sharp draught there. You think it hardly possible since he was very dressed. You are almost sure that he fell ill again only because he went out too early.
4. Mary comes to the institute all in a mess. Her shoe-laces have come untied, and her dress is quite crumpled up. You wonder why she looks such a fright today.

## Test Yourself

**Choose the appropriate modal verb and insert it in the correct form:**

1. The inevitable ... be accepted.  
a) need, b) can, c) must
2. It's fantastic and it ... not be true.  
a) must, b) can, c) should
3. A fool ... ask more questions than a wise man ... answer.  
A. a) may                      B. a) should  
b) to have to                b) may  
c) will                            c) can
4. It was very hot and I ... take a drink of beer to cool my mouth.  
a) have to, b) be to, c) would
5. Why ... I have to do everything to please him?  
a) must, b) shall, c) should
6. The arrangement was that you ... give your views and I ... say what I thought of them.  
A. a) be to                      B. a) can  
b) would                        b) may  
c) must                            c) be to
7. I promised to take her to the theatre last Saturday and I really forgot all about it. We ... have met at the station.  
a) ought to, b) be to, c) should

8. You ... not hurry; we have plenty of time.  
a) must, b) should, c) need
9. He looked more than ever out of place. He ... have stayed at home, he thought.  
a) should, b) can, c) must
10. I'm sorry. I ... not to have said it in the presence of the children.  
a) may, b) ought, c) must
11. Time adverbs ... come at the end of the sentence, but not in the middle.  
a) must, b) will, c) may
12. He is not to be found anywhere. He ... have left.  
a) can, b) must, c) should
13. I'm not to blame. You ... have warned me.  
a) may, b) ought, c) will
14. You ... stay just where you are!  
a) shall, b) will, c) should
15. No matter how hard he tried, the engine ... not start.  
a) will, b) ought, c) would
16. We were both silent. What we had said ... not be taken back.  
a) can, b) may, c) must
17. It ... rain, you'd better take a coat.  
a) can, b) will, c) may
18. You ... not turn on the light. I can see quite well.  
a) need, b) must, c) may
19. Where is Nick? He ... be in his office.  
a) might, b) should, c) would
20. You have just had lunch. You ... not be hungry.  
a) can, b) should, c) must

**Key:**

1. must; 2. can; 3. A – may; B – can; 4. had to; 5. should; 6. A – were to; B – was to; 7. were to; 8. need; 9. should; 10. ought; 11. may; 12. must; 13. might; 14. shall; 15. would; 16. could; 17. may; 18. need; 19. might; 20. can.

## Translation Exercises

**Ex. 1. Translate into English using the modal auxiliaries *can/could*.**

1. Nevar būt, ka viõð nokavçja. Viõð vienmçr ir punktuāls.
2. Vai tieðām viõð atstāja izklaidīga cilvçka iespaidu uz jums?
3. Nevar būt, ka es jûs būtu sapratis nepareizi.
4. Nevar būt, ka viõð ðo grāmatu būtu izlasījis tik ātri. Tā ir viõam par smagu.
5. Nevar būt, ka viõa neatrada jûsu māju.
6. Diez vai viõa to aizmirsa. Vçl vakar es viõai par to atgādināju.
7. Vai tieðām jûs neat-

ceraties, ka es jums ðo grāmatu atdevu? 8. Vai kāds varĉja iedomāties, ka ði komanda ieòems pirmo vietu? 9. Vai tieðām jūs neatradāt manu grāmatu?

### ***May / might.***

1. Tieðām, jūs taðu varĉjāt to izdarīt manā labā. 2. Pasaki viòam, ka viòð varĉtu bût uzmanīgāks pret saviem vecajiem draugiem. 3. Kaut gan izskatās, ka būs lietus, bet, kas zin', varbût rīt būs labs laiks. 4. Ðo izteicienu varat atrast jebkurā grāmatā. 5. Es domāju, ka jūs varĉsiet pierunāt viðu, ja vien pacentīsities. 6. Es domāju, ka jūs bûtu varĉjis viðu pierunāt, ja vien bûtu pacenties. 7. Ja jūs bûtu izbraucis 10 minûtes vĉlāk, jūs bûtu varĉjis nokavĉt vilcienu. 8. Cik jūs neuzmanīgs! Jūs tak bûtu varĉjis salauzt kāju. 9. Ja jums bûtu ði aizòcmuma obligācijas, jūs varĉtu laimĉt. 10. Vĉl minûte, un bĉrns bûtu varĉjis pakiût zem tramvāja. 11. Ja jūs bûtu mani brīdinājis par viòa aizbraukðanu, iespĉjams, es bûtu varĉjis aiziet viðu pavādīt. 12. Iespĉjams, viòð par visu zināja, bet to neizrādīja. 13. Iespĉjams, par to nerunāja atklāti, taðu nez' kāpĉc viss bija zināms.

### ***Must.***

1. Droði vien, viòa gaida mūs institûtā. 2. Viòai mūs jāgaida institûtā. 3. Ārst saka, ka viòam jādzīvo dienvidos. 4. Droði vien, viòð dzīvo dienvidos. 5. Lai uzlabotu savu izrunu, viòam daudz jālasa skaii. 6. Acīmredzot, viòð daudz lasa skaii; viòam ir laba izruna. 7. Man te jāpaliek līdz ziemai. 8. Acīmredzot, viòa viesojās pie draugiem, jo viòa rakstīja, ka pavadīs atvairinājumu pie viòiem. 9. Droði vien, viòi gaida mani, bet es nekādi nevaru viòiem paziòot par sevi. 10. Grāmata ir izpārdota. Vajag to pameklĉt antikvariātos. 11. Viòð, droði vien, ir aizmirsis, ka apsoliņa atnākt. 12. Viòi, laikam, raksta sacerĉjumau jau apmĉram divas stundas, un drīz viòiem tas jābeidz.

### **Ex. 2. Translate the following sentences into English avoiding the use of *not*.**

1. Pĉdcjā laikā viòð pavisam pie mums nenāk. Droði vien, viòð nezina, ka mĉs jau esam Rīgā. 3. Droði vien, jūs mani neatpazināt un tāpĉc nepienācāt pie manis. 3. Jūs, laikam, nemaz to nemĉi inājāt izdarīt, citādi jūs neteiktu, ka tas ir viegli. 4. Acīmredzot, ārzemnieks nepareizi izrunāja ði ĉdiena nosaukumu, un viesmīlis viòam atnesa glupi ko citu. 5. Jūs, droði vien, neesat lietas kursā. Mūsu ekskursijas plāns ir mainījies. 6. Droði vien, jums par to neko nepateica. Citādi jūs bûtu atnācis agrāk. 7. Acīmredzot, viòi vilcienu nenokavĉja. Citādi viòi jau bûtu atgriezuðies. 8. Acīmredzot, viòi nokavĉja vilcienu, jo izgāja no mājām pārāk vĉlu. 9. Viòð, laikam, tā arī neuzminĉja, kāpĉc mĉs smĉjāmies. 10. Jūs, laikam, nolikāt atslĉgu citā vietā, un es nevarĉju tikt mājā. 11. Jūs, droði vien, viðu neatpazināt? – Nĉ, tas nebija viòð. 12. Acīmredzot, viòus nepareizi informĉja. Viòiem vajadzĉja atnākt ðodien.

**Ex. 3. Translate into English, using *to have to, to be to, must*.**

1. Jums šis darbs jāveic līdz ceturtdienai. 2. Man šo darbu bija jāveic līdz ceturtdienai. 3. Jums nevajag pārtraukt darbu, kamēr to nepabeigsiet. Rīt jau ceturtdiena. 4. Man nācās šo darbu veikt līdz ceturtdienai. 5. Man šo darbu nāksies veikt līdz ceturtdienai. 6. Viņam nākas šo darbu veikt šodien, jo visu šo laiku viņš bija aizņemts. 7. Jums nenāksies veikt šo darbu. 8. Man šo darbu nevajadzēja veikt. 9. Tā kā viņš visu sagatavoja iepriekš, viņam tas nav jādara tagad. 10. Acīmredzot, viņš nepaguva paveikt darbu iepriekš, un viņam vajadzēja (vajadzēs) tam veltīt visu svētdienu, tā kā to vajag pabeigt līdz pirmdienai. 11. 'Ļonodēģi mums nāksies veikt virkni jaunu eksperimentu', – teica laboratorijas vadītājs. 12. Nebija nekādas izvēles, un viņam nācās piekrist. 13. Man vajadzēja iet uz bibliotēku gandrīz katru dienu: bija palikušas tikai dažas dienas līdz tam laikam, kad man vajadzēja nolasīt referātu, bet es vēl nebiju uzrakstījis ne pusi. 14. Man nāksies pāris dienas pasēdēt mājās. Ārsts saka, ka es nedrīkstu nekur iet, kamēr temperatūra būs normāla.

***Need.***

1. Mums ievilkta telefonu, un mums vairs nevajag iet pie kaimiņiem. 2. Viņiem nav nepieciešams braukt tik tālu; var strādāt mūsu lasītavā. 3. Jums nav obligāti jānāk pašam, variet atsūtīt kādu citu. 4. Jums nevajadzēja pirkt šo vārdnīcu, man ir viens lieks eksemplārs, un es to būtu labprāt iedevis jums. 5. Viņam nevajadzēja to iztīrīt tik sīki, tas tik un tā neko nelīdzēja.

***Must, to be to, to have to or need.***

1. Vai pasniedzējs teica, ka mums šis teksts jāmacās no galvas? 2. Es nezināju, ka šo tekstu nevajag mācīties no galvas. 3. Jūs vēltīgi mācījāties šo tekstu no galvas; to vajadzēja tikai lasīt. 4. Netrokšojiet, bērni, droši vien, guļ. 5. Droši vien, neviens viņam to nepateica. 6. Viņiem vajadzēja atnākt pulkst.piecos, bet nu jau ir seši. 7. Viņi, droši vien, aizmirsā, ka viņiem bija jāatnāk pulkstens piecos. 6. Un tomēr, draugi, mums nāksies pagaidīt vēl. 9. Ceru, jums nenācās ilgi gaidīt, vai ne? 10. Šo grāmatu var atrast jūkurā bibliotēkā. 11. Vai ir vērts uztraukties par tādiem sīkumiem?

***Must, to be to, to have to, needn't, should.***

1. Man nevajadzēja ar viņu runāt tādā tonī. Acīmredzot, tieši mans tonis viņu aizvainoja. 2. Mēs, droši vien, viņu nesatīkām. Mums vajadzēja atnākt agrāk. 3. Jums nevajadzēja tā steigties; ņe it vajadzēja būt ne agrāk kā piecos. 4. Viņai vajadzēja gludināt šo kleitu no kreisās puses; tagad viņai nāksies to saslapināt vēlreiz. 5. Viņai nevajadzēja logu aizvērt tik ātri; vajadzēja istabu izvēdināt kārtīgāk. 6. Tam bija jānotiek. Viņa izklaidība visiem zināma. 7. To jau varēja sagaidīt, nav ko brīnīties. 8. Šis zāles var dabūt tikai pēc ārsta receptes. 9. Tur, acīmredzot, līst; skat, kādas tumšas debesis. 10. Kamdēģi

gan man būtu jādara tas, ko man nevajag darīt. 11. Viõi, droði vien, par kaut ko dzīvi sarunājās; viõi pat nemanīja, ka mēs ienācām istabā. 12. Pēc gada ðis dzelzceið būs pilnīgi elektrificēts.

### *Shall, will, should, would.*

1. Tu to nedarīsi. Atceries to! 2. Es paveikðu ðo darbu laikā, lai arī man nāktos negulēt visu nakti. 3. Viðð teica, ka viðam būs jāaizbrauc pēc pāris dienām, bet mēs par to pat dzirdēt negribējām. 4. Nepūlieties viðam pierādīt, ka jums taisnība. Viðu nekad nevar pārliecināt. Viðð ir ioti stūrgalvīgs. 5. Jūs atbildēsiet par savu rīcību. 6. Jums nāksies likt eksāmenu vçlreiz. Vajag lielāku uzmanību pievçrst sintaksei. 7. Es apgūlos un mçi ināju aizmigt, bet miegs nenāca un nenāca. 8. Jums vajadzçjs redzēt viðas seju, kad viðā dzirdçja ðos jaunumus.

### **Ex. 4. Translate into English.**

1. Variet savu rakstu ðodien nenest; to tik un tã iespiedīs tikai rīt. 2. Tu veltīgi apjautājies pie kaimiņiem; grāmatu es atradu uz tava galda. 3. Tu veltīgi tad nepajautāji kaimiņiem; iespçjams, grāmata ir pie viðiem, bet tagad jau viõi ir aizgājuði. 4. Viðam pat nevajadzçja nosaukt savu vārdu, visi labi pazina viðu. Viðam nevajadzçja savu uzvārdu nosaukt tik skaii; tas tikai piesaistīja lieku uzmanību. 5. Jūs taðu varçjāt pabeigt zīmçjumu līdz vakaram, un avīze būtu iznākusi laikā. Lai neaizkavçtu avīzes iznākšanu, jums vajadzçja zīmçjumu pabeigt līdz vakaram. 6. Viðð būtu varçjis to padarīt arī viens, taðu divatã viõi, protams, darbu padarīja daudz ātrāk. Viðð varçja aiziet arī pats, viðam nevajadzçja tur sūtīt jūs, jūs taðu esat vecāks par viðu. 7. Draugi, kamdçi lai mēs gaidītu tik ilgi vienu cilvçku. Viðam jau vajadzçja atnākt piecos, bet tagad ir jau seði. Nevaru saprast, kas būtu varçjis ar viðu notikt, viðð vienmçr ir tik akurāts. Iespçjams, ka viðu aizkavçja kāds steidzams darbs, vai viðð, iespçjams, aizmirsā, ka viðam jāatnāk uz ðejieni. Diez' vai iespçjams, ka viðð būtu aizmirsis par mūsu tikšanos, viðð pats taðu nolika dienu un laiku. 8. Vai es varçtu palūgt jūs to izdarīt ðodien? – Pat nelūdziet. Es jau teicu, ka, iespçjams, nevarçðu izdarīt pat to, kas man jāizdara pirmām kārtām. Es labprāt palīdzçðu jums, tikai citã laikā. 9. Vai es varçtu tikties ar Ozola k-gu? – Pagaidiet, viðam tūlīt jāatnāk. Kur es varçtu atrast Ozola k-gu? – Viðð, droði vien, ir blakus istabā. 10. Vai tieðām viðð tã apjuka? – Protams, un pat nosarka. Būtu tu redzçjis viðu tai brīdī! 11. Viðð nemaz nav tik kautrīgs. Iespçjams, jūsu jautājums bija negaidīts un samulsināja viðu. Jūs taðu varçjāt viðu brīdināt un nenostādīt viðu tik neveiklã situācijã. 12. Viðð, acīmredzot, nesaprata jūsu domu. Jums vajadzçja sīkāk izskaidrot savu viedokli. 13. Kãpçç viðas nav? Vai tieðām viðā apvainojās un nolçma nenākt? 14. Man vajadzçja par to jums pajautāt iepriekð. IZRĀDĪJĀS, ka es veltīgi braucu uz staciju un stāvçju rindã. Biietes varçja pasūtīt pa telefonu. 15. Man nenācās ilgi meklēt tavu



māju, jo es satiku tavu kaimiņu, un mēs atnācām kopā. 16. Kāpēc tu tik agri? Tu taču taisījies nobeigt referātu. – Es nevarēju to izdarīt šodien. Bibliotēka slēgta; nācās darbu atlikt līdz rītdienai. 17. Kāpēc tu tik agri? – Mums nenācās ilgi sēdēt sapulcē: visus jautājumus izlēmām ātri.

Svētdien no rīta man vajadzēja iet uz bibliotēku, lai gatavotos referātam, ko man jānolasa angļu valodas stundā. Taču es nevarēju dabūt nepieciešamās grāmatas, jo atnācu vēlu. Acīmredzot, kāds cits students bija tās paņēmis pirms manis. Man būtu vajadzējis atnākt agrāk. Bija nepatīkami, ka tagad man nāksies nākt vēlreiz. Kad es jau taisījos iet projām, pienāca apmēram trīsdesmit gadus veca sieviete un teica: 'Man jūsu seja liekas pazīstama. Mēs esam noteikti tikušas. Es tikai neatceros kur'. – 'Es arī neatceros', es teicu. – 'Iespējams, mēs tikāmies vasarā atpūtas namā'. – 'Iespējams. Nevar būt, ka mēs būtu strādājušas vai mācījušas kopā. Tad mums būtu jāatceras vienai otru labāk'.

---

## THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

---

### Adverbial Clauses of Unreal Condition

**Ex. 1. Comment on the form of the subjunctive mood. Translate the sentences into Latvian.**

1. If it were not for hope, the heart would break. 2. If there were no clouds, we should not enjoy the sun. 3. If wishes were horses, beggars would ride. 4. 'If I had brains I wouldn't be here'. Bonello, said. 5. Had he put his arms around her, she would have tried to struggle away. 6. There was no place to fall back to if there should be an Austrian attack. 7. I'd miss them if they weren't here. 8. He felt that if there had been another adult present the two of them would have exchanged a significant glance over his head. 9. Most people felt that had she happened to have been holding a knife she would with equal coolness have stabbed him. 10. If people had had to vote out in the open, it would probably have gone much differently. 11. Had his mother been there she would have chided him for his rudeness: and he would have defended himself by saying that it didn't matter to the Crisps: they understood. 12. She would have been surprised had one of the women in her many activities told her of the fact they had all observed that her son had a reputation for keeping to himself. 13. Had it not been for that old man's scurrilous intervention, he would not be sitting out here now in the middle of the night staring at the water. 14. If I were you, I wouldn't lend him

money. 15. If the baby should wake up, give him some warm milk. 16. Were we all completely satisfied with the existing state of affairs, there would be no progress. 17. Now, if only we were born old and grew younger year by year we should understand how things happen, and drop all our cursed intolerance.

**Ex. 2. Say what you would do in my place.**

Model: to work harder → If I were you I **should (would) work** harder.

*Prompts:* to follow my doctor's advice, to make an appointment by phone, to continue my university course, to start my training, to write a book about my experience, to keep out of it, to take a holiday, to apply for the extension of my visa, to take my teacher's advice and study hard, to take legal advice (to consult a lawyer), to act on my uncle's advice (to do what my uncle suggests), to accept the offer, to start early, to admit my mistake.

**Ex. 3. Advise your neighbour not to do it.**

Model: to go to bed so late → If I were you I **shouldn't (wouldn't) go** to bed so late.

*Prompts:* to be rude to my sister, to waste my time, to waste my money, to deliver mail for a living, to sell ice-cream for a living, to ask my sister to clean my shoes, to ask my mother to iron my shirts, to keep a snake as a pet, to watch television for five hours a day, to disturb my neighbours, to get into debt, to make a noise, to make a row, to forget to switch the lights off, to go out without an umbrella on a rainy day, to buy a lot of new clothes, to believe all the gossip I hear, to smoke very powerful cigarettes, to use very strong scent.

**Ex. 4. Say what places of interest you would visit if you went to London.**

Model: If I went to London I **should (would) visit** the British Museum.

*Prompts:* Trafalgar Square, the Tower of London, St. Paul's Cathedral, Westminster Abbey, the Poet's corner in Westminster Abbey, the National Gallery, the library and the reading room of the British Museum, Highgate Cemetery, Hyde Park, the East End.

**Ex. 5. Ask your friend where she would go if she wanted to buy something.**

Model: a hat (to the millinery) → Where would you go if you wanted to buy a hat? – If I wanted to buy a hat I **should (would) go** to the millinery.

*Prompts:* 1. Buttons and needles (to the haberdashery). 2. A pair of shoes in leather (to the shoe department). 3. A pair of stockings (to the hosiery). 4. Towels and sheets (to the linen department). 5. Writing-paper and ink (to the stationary). 6. A pair of tennis shoes (to the shoe shop). 7. Exercise-books, ball-pens and pencils (to the stationary).

**Ex. 6. Say what would have happened if he had done it.**

Model: If he had explained his problem to me (to help him) → If he had explained his problem to me I **should (would) have helped** him.

1. If he had given his telephone number (to warn him in time). 2. If he had answered all the questions (to pass his examination). 3. If he had brought a map with him (not to lose the way). 4. If he had set his alarm clock (not to oversleep). 5. If he had explained the situation to his mother (she, to find the way out). 6. If he had followed his teacher's advice (not to fail his examination). 7. If he had invited them to the party (they, to accept the invitation). 8. If he had discovered the truth (to give up the idea completely). 9. If he had made a mistake (the teacher, to correct it).

**Ex. 7. Say what you would have done if the weather had been fine yesterday.**

Model: to go to the country → If the weather had been fine yesterday I **should (would) have gone** to the country.

*Prompts:* to go fishing, not to stay at home, to go boating, to go for a drive to the country, to go sightseeing, to go for a picnic, to go to the zoo, to weed the flowerbed, to plant rose-bushes in my garden, to take my daughter to the seaside, to invite my friend for a walk.

**Ex. 8. Express your supposition.**

Model: I wonder why George ran by without saying hello. (to be in a hurry) → He must have been in a hurry. – You're probably right. If he **hadn't** been in a hurry, he **wouldn't have run** by without saying hello.

1. I wonder why Roger was absent from English class all last week. (to be very sick) 2. I wonder why Mike arrived late for work. (to miss the bus) 3. I wonder why Bob got sick last night. (to eat something he shouldn't have) 4. I wonder why Dad went to sleep so early. (to have a hard day at the office) 5. I wonder why Andrew was so irritable today. (to be upset about something) 6. I wonder why my dress shrank so much. (to be 100 per cent cotton) 7. I wonder why Sheila prepared so much food. (to expect a lot of people to come to her party) 8. I wonder why Steve went home early today. (to be feeling 'under the weather') 9. I wonder why my barber cut my hair so quickly today. (to have a lot of customers after you)

**Ex. 9. Use the corresponding form of the Subjunctive Mood instead of the infinitive in brackets.**

1. If you (to take) this book before, you would have translated this article. 2. If you (to ring up) me yesterday, I should have told you about her arrival and you would have met her at the station. 3. If all the students (to take part) in this work, everything would have been done long ago. 4. If everybody (to come) yesterday, we should have considered that problem. 5. If I (to know) about this I should have bought tickets before time. 6. If your sister (to buy) tickets she would have rung you up. 7. If she (to have) much work to do yesterday, she would not have gone to the cinema yesterday but would have stayed at home and worked. 8. If I (to know) him I should have asked him to do this. 9. If he (to remember) about your book at that time, he would have brought it. 10. If you (to help) me to translate this article I should have done it long ago.

**Ex. 10. Use the corresponding mood form instead of the infinitive in brackets. Make the condition unreal.**

1. If my dress (to be) ready I (to put on) it tomorrow. 2. If you (to go) to the station now, you (to find) him there. The train starts at 2 o'clock. 3. If your son (not to be lazy) he (to get) good marks. 4. If this girl (to speak) louder, everybody (to hear) her. 5. If you (to be) at home, you (to prepare) your report. 6. Your baggage (to be taken) to the station if it (to be packed). 7. Your dress (to be made) if you (to order it) not later than tomorrow. 8. Your article (to be published) if you (to finish) it today. 9. We (to do) exercises if we (not to go) to the theatre tonight. 10. If she (to be) a great authority on the matter, she (to make) a report willingly. 11. If the project (to be submitted) for discussion yesterday, the decision (to be read) now. 12. It (to be amazing) if he (to remember) every detail of what had happened so long ago. 13. If (there is) any change, the committee will know. 14. If you (to happen) to be present at the ceremonial meeting, you (to congratulate) them on our behalf. 15. They (to do) their best to render you every support, if (there is) a slightest possibility. 16. If anyone (to call), I (to give) him the telephone number so that he (to get in touch) with you. 17. I (to speak), if I (to be sure) of the answer. 18. I (to help) him, if he (to ask) me. 19. He (to do) the work, if he (to have) time. 20. I (to go) for a walk, if the rain (to stop). 21. You (to see) the Eiffel Tower, if you (to go) to Paris. 22. If I (to receive) any news about them, I (to let) you know. 23. If it (to rain), the garden-party (to be spoiled). 24. The boy (to post) your letter, if you (to give) it to him. 25. If I (to be) you, I (to be) very careful. 26. If the blouse (to match) this shirt, I (to buy) it.

**Ex. 11. Complete the following sentences using the Subjunctive mood.**

1. If it were not so late ... 2. If it were Sunday today ... 3. If you invited him ... 4. If I were you ... 5. If she lived in London ... 6. If you had waited a little ... 7. If I could play the piano ... 8. If you had done as I told you ... 9. If she were my sister ... 10. If the weather were fine ... 11. We should go to the country if ... 12. I should help her if ... 13. He would have done it for you, no doubt, if ... 14. They would play tennis now if ... 15. I should have come yesterday if ... 16. What would you do if ... 17. It would be very nice if ... 18. I'd have a walking holiday if ... 19. They'd be only very glad if ... 20. Everything would have been all right if ...

**Ex. 12. Fill in the blanks with the corresponding form of the Subjunctive Mood.**

1. If I ... free yesterday, I ... to the museum with you (were, had been; should go, should have gone). 2. If the children ... tired yesterday, they ... to bed at 8 o'clock. But they got so tired, that were about to fall asleep at the table (didn't get tired, hadn't got tired; should go, should have gone). 3. If it ... yesterday, we ... at home for the whole day. We should not have gone to the country (was, were, had been raining; should be, would have been). 4. If she ... her exams in time, she ... to the rest home (passed, had passed; would go, would have gone). 5. If this article ... published, I certainly ... it. I receive this magazine regularly (was, were, had been; should, should have read). 6. If the train ... late, we ... come early in the morning (was, were, had been; should, should have). 7. If your letter ... me at home, I ... answer it and inform you about my plans for the future (caught, had caught; should, should have).

**Ex. 13. Change the clauses omitting the conjunction *if*.**

1. If I were in town now, I should be able to buy the complete works of Galsworthy. 2. You would not have put on weight, if you had kept your diet. 3. If you had a greater sense of responsibility, you would have considered this matter long ago. 4. If my friend had gone in for sports last winter, it would have done him a lot of good. 5. I should tell you everything in detail if you could keep secret.

**Ex. 14. Change into sentences of unreal condition.**

Model: She won't help us as she is not here. – She **would help** us if she **were** here.  
We did not meet so often because she lived far from my place. – We **should have met** more often if she **had not lived** so far from my place.

1. They will do it if they can. 2. It isn't summer now, and we don't go to the country. 3. He doesn't write to me, and I don't write to him. 4. She didn't

find the book because she didn't open the bag. 5. It will be better if they don't come. 6. I didn't give it to you because you were out. 7. I can't knit another sweater as I have no more wool. 8. I don't study Italian as I haven't much spare time. 9. She didn't follow the doctor's advice and fell seriously ill. 10. The boy is shivering. He isn't quite well. 11. He refuses my help, and the work won't be finished today. 12. I have a headache because I had a sleepless night. 13. Anne can't translate this song: she doesn't know French well enough. 14. You are not quite all right now because you didn't take the medicine regularly. 15. They took a taxi and didn't miss the train. 16. He doesn't know her address, or he will write to her, I'm sure. 17. The garden doesn't look beautiful because the trees are bare. 18. He makes so many mistakes because he doesn't know grammar well enough. 19. Will you do it for me if I ask you?

**Ex. 15. Show that the condition is not likely to be fulfilled.**

Model: If by any chance they miss the 7 o'clock train, they will hire a taxi.  
→ If they should miss the 7 o'clock train, they will hire a taxi.

1. If by any chance you need my help, let me know. 2. If by any chance he calls while I'm out, ask him to wait. 3. If by any chance I forget my promise, remind me about it. 4. If by any chance you happen to be in Minsk, call on me. 5. If by any chance you fail to see him, give the book to his sister. 6. If by any chance Henry asks me to lend him some money, I shall give him a piece of my mind. 7. If by any chance he discovers the truth, my heart will break. 8. If by any chance my plan fails, I shall find a solution. 9. If by any chance Steve fails his examination, he will take it again in June. 10. I'm sure they won't come this week. But if by any chance they arrive tonight, we'll be ready for them.

**Ex. 16. Rewrite the sentences. Show that you don't think it will happen.**

Model: If it happened, Helen would be very surprised. → If it **should happen**, Helen **would be** very surprised. – **Should** it **happen**, Helen **would be** very surprised.

1. If it happened, Polly would be very annoyed. 2. If it happened, they would be most surprised. 3. If it happened, everybody would be very interested. 4. If it happened, it would be marvellous. 5. If it happened, it would be very funny. 6. If it happened, Richard would be very angry. 7. If it happened, it would be very unusual. 8. If it happened, it would be astonishing. 9. If it happened, Jane would not forgive you. 10. If it happened, Berg would be ashamed.

**Ex. 17. Paraphrase the sentences using the Subjunctive mood.**

Model: 1. I want to go to the cinema with you but I have to take my examination in English tomorrow.

**But for** this examination I should go to the cinema with you.

2. She made an effort over herself and didn't faint.

**But for** making an effort over herself she would have fainted.

1. He helped me and I managed to find my work in time. 2. He is an experienced engineer and he gave us good advice. 3. He was in bad humour the other night and did not produce a favourable impression on my guests. 4. It began to rain and we didn't reach the village in time. 5. He didn't buy the new suit only because he was short of money at that time. 6. We felt ill at ease in her presence only because of her vanity. 7. She had a headache and didn't take part in our amateur concert. 8. The driver was very skilled and we reached the camp at daybreak. 9. He had a good temper, so he made friends easily. 10. He was very absent-minded and left our ticket at home.

**Ex. 18. Say that the previous engagement interferes with your intentions.**

Model: to go with you → But for the previous engagement I **should (would) go** with you.

*Prompts:* to join you, to go skiing, to go skating, to stay at home, to visit him, to spend my holidays in the country, to accept his invitation, to go there next Tuesday, to go shopping, to go bathing, to go out in one of the boats, to stay here for two days more.

**Ex. 19. Tell your friends about your impression of the journey.**

Model: rain → But for the rain I **should (would) have had** a pleasant journey.

*Prompts:* cold, heat, storm, thunderstorm, strong wind, bad weather, heavy snow, headache, toothache, earache, incident, his company.

## The Subject Clause

**Ex. 1. Use the corresponding mood form instead of the infinitive in brackets.**

1. It is necessary that the child (to feel) happy in your family. 2. It is required that the meeting not (to be cancelled). 3. It is annoying that they not (to have engaged) a new secretary. We have a lot of work to do. 4. It is required that you (to keep) the engagements. 5. It is required that you (to

take steps) to improve his position. 6. It is annoying that we (to deal) with this matter again. 7. It is necessary that all the students of the group (to be present) at this conference. 8. It is necessary that you (to be) frank with her. 9. It is necessary that we (to arrange) everything for the party. 10. It is necessary that she (to apologize to the students of the group) for being rude. 11. He is one of the best workers and it is necessary that his name (to be mentioned) in the article. 12. It is required that you (to return) all the books to the library at the end of the year. 13. It is important that they (to have called the appointment off). 14. It is necessary that you never (to put off) till tomorrow what you can do today.

**Ex. 2. Complete the following sentences.**

1. It is annoying that they ... 2. It was strange that she ... 3. It is impossible that he ... 4. It is surprising that the monitor of the group ... 5. It is annoying that the weather ... 6. I consider it natural that the daughter ... 7. We find it quite understandable that the child ...

**Ex. 3. Give instructions to the students.**

Model: to attend the ceremony → It's necessary (obligatory, advisable) that you **should attend** the ceremony.

*Prompts:* to leave your student's cards at the Dean's Office, to take part in the competition, to attend your lectures regularly, to be there to meet the guests, to attend the meeting, to act as guides for the delegation, to be there to meet the delegation, to show the guests round the city.

**Ex. 4. Say that you are sorry your friend did it.**

Model: to miss the train → It's a pity that he **should have missed** the train.

*Prompts:* to miss the chance, to miss the talk that was worth hearing, to fail the examination, to lose his job, to fail to meet them, to change his mind, to fail to read the instruction before he started answering the questions.

## The Predicative Clause

**Ex. 1. Comment on the form of the subjunctive mood. Translate the sentences into Latvian.**

1. He looked as if he were breasting a strong wind. 2. He looked as if he had not merely just come from the oil fields but had been soaking in a barrel of oil for weeks. 3. He felt almost as if there were another adult present, invisible. 4. It was as if he had wandered upon some strange tribal custom of an exotic sea people unschooled in what civilized man consid-



ered abhorrent. 5. He felt as if he had just been among loving friends whom he was leaving momentarily. 6. The girl looked as if she were about to cry. 7. I feel as if I hadn't been home for a long time. 8. It seemed as if he did not believe anybody. 9. He felt as if he had come to that town for the first time. 10. She looks as if she had come back from a health resort. 11. It looked as though the silence of the night were getting on her nerves. 12. He felt as if a hand of ice had been laid upon his heart. 13. Henry felt as if he could hear Basil Hallward's heart beating, and wondered what was coming. 14. It was as if he were carrying a message he had memorized in a foreign tongue unintelligible to him, but clear and significant to the hearer.

**Ex. 2. Using the idea given in brackets complete each sentence with *as if (as though)*.**

Model: (I don't have wings and I can't fly). I was so happy that I felt ... →  
I was so happy that I felt as if I had wings and I could fly.

1. (I didn't climb Mt. Everest). When I reached the fifth floor I felt... . 2. (Peter is not a top student). When the teacher praised Peter he felt ... . 3. (We haven't known each other all our lives). After talking to each other for only a short time, we felt ... . 4. (I won't burst). I was so excited that I felt ... . 5. (I wasn't run over by a five-ton truck). I feel terrible. I feel. ... . 6. (I haven't seen this picture before). When I looked at the picture I felt ... . 7. (The silence of the night is not getting on her nerves). She was restless. It seemed ... . 8. (Ann doesn't have a headache). She is nervous and she can't concentrate on the subject. She looks ... . 9. (They didn't win the game). They were happy. They looked ... .

**Ex. 3. Use the appropriate Mood form instead of the infinitive in brackets.**

1. For a moment Ralf felt as if he ... back in short trousers and in front of his old schoolmaster. (to be) 2. It sounded as if it ... something important, but it wasn't. (to be) 3. It looks as though the silence of the night ... on her nerves. (to get) 4. They felt as if they ... under siege. (to be) 5. Now that we're together again it looks as though we ... (not to part) 6. She looked pale and as if she ... excited. (to be) 7. He fancied that she looked as though she ... him. (not to believe) 8. The little girl looked for a moment as though she ... to cry. (to be going) 9. The streets looked as if they ... of silver. (to make) 10. It seemed as if she ... the entire day. (to wait) 11. He looked as if he ... anything in his life. (never to fear) 12. He felt as if he ... (to fly) 13. It was as though somebody ... a hurried search for something. (to make) 14. The voice sounded as if it ... in the room. (to be)

**Ex. 4. Complete the sentences using the appropriate form of the Subjunctive Mood.**

1. He looked as if ... (he / to be surprised). 2. Her voice sounds as if ... (she / to be upset). 3. Why do you look as if ... ? (you / not to believe). 4. She felt as though ... (she / to see). 5. The water tasted as though ... (it / to be not fresh). 6. It was as if ... (we / not to be friends). 7. It seemed as though ... (the man / to cheat). 8. He feels as if ... (he / to be fooled). 9. The air smells as though ... (it / to be spring). 10. Why do you look as if ... ? (you / to be angry). 11. The soup tastes as if ... (it / not to salted). 12. He looks as if ... (he / to be running). 13. I feel as though ... (I / not to sleep). 14. It seems as though ... (the weather / to break). 15. His words sounded as if ... (he / to be offended). 16. She looked as though ... (his movements/ to irritate). 17. I feel as if ... (I / to swallow). 18. It is as if ... (she / to deceive). 19. It was as though ... (somebody / to strike). 20. It seemed as if ... (I / not to be).

## The Object Clause

**Ex. 1. Say what you would suggest to Paul.**

Model: to change his job → I suggest that Paul **should change** his job.

*Prompts:* to withdraw his accusation, to give a detailed account for his trip, to make an interval, to tell us what has happened, to make an early start tomorrow, to see a doctor, to follow the instructions, to read the instructions carefully before he starts answering the questions, not to go to bed late, to retype this agenda.

**Ex. 2. Say what instructions and recommendations you were given at your practical course at school.**

Model: The teacher recommended (suggested, demanded, insisted, requested, ordered, required, was anxious) that we **should come** to school half an hour before the lessons.

*Prompts:* to fulfil all the various functions of professional and social activity, to work out new methods of teaching, to plan different types of lessons, to conduct different types of lessons, to use visual aids at different stages of the lesson, to act as class tutors, to carry out educational work in out-of-school hours, to keep in touch with the pupil's parents, to take part in the school life, to discuss plans of the lessons, to analyse our lessons thoroughly, to analyse the causes of our successes and failures, to enrich our theoretical knowledge.

**Ex. 3. Fill in the blanks using the proper mood form.**

1. A new film was on and I suggested that we ... and see it. 2. The dean ordered that all the students ... the books back to the library before they leave for holiday. 3. The teacher ordered that the pupils ... their parents to sign the day-books. 4. The teacher insisted that all parents ... all the class meetings. 5. The children insisted that their teacher ... them a new story. 6. I insist that you ... a new dress for the New Year party. 7. The doctor insisted that all the children ... for a walk every day if the weather was fine. 8. I am afraid lest you ... late for your classes, please hurry up, there are only 30 minutes left. 9. No matter how hard she tried to persuade her father to allow her to go to Riga, he insisted that she ... to the country with her mother. 10. It was late and I insisted that our meeting ... till Sunday. 11. The day is very windy, I ordered that the children ... their coats on, I feared lest they ... cold.

**Ex. 4. Say that you'd like the present situation to be different.**

Model A: I don't speak Italian. → I wish I **spoke** Italian.

Model B: They quarrel very often. → I wish they **didn't quarrel** so often.

1. My parents do not approve of my boyfriend. 2. My brother doesn't take interest in history. 3. My aunt takes everything to heart. 4. My son is not on good terms with all the boys in his class. 5. I do not keep in touch with my old friends. 6. My sister has the 'flu. 7. He is not confident of success. 8. You do not understand your son well enough. 9. John smokes much. 10. My son doesn't like serious music. 11. I live so far away from my parents. 12. Susan is very tired. 13. You feel tired. 14. You have to go to bed so late.

**Ex. 5. Make dialogues by analogy.**

Model: (to live in London) →

- Does Bill enjoy living in Manchester?
- Not really. He wishes he lived in London.

1. Does Roger enjoy driving a lorry? (to drive a taxi) 2. Does Ronald enjoy painting houses? (to paint pictures) 3. Does Henry enjoy being a teacher? (to be a cosmonaut) 4. Does Gloria enjoy living in the suburbs? (to live in the city) 5. Does Jessica enjoy working here? (to work in some place else) 6. Does Richard enjoy being single? (to be married) 7. Does Mrs Smith enjoy teaching math? (to teach English) 8. Does Janet enjoy having two part-time jobs? (to have one good full-time job) 9. Does Larry enjoy studying German? (to study Spanish) 10. Does Mary enjoy selling TV sets? (to sell ready-made clothes)

**Ex. 6. Say that your friend will regret what he did.**

Model A: to help him → You'll wish you **had helped** him.

Model B: to refuse to help him → You'll wish you **hadn't refused** to help him.

*Prompts:* to waste so much time, to send him a telegram, to call her a fool, to hurt smb's feelings, to disobey him, to obey him, to tell the truth, to tell a lie, to buy the house, to sell the house, to lend him money, to borrow money from him, to ask for advice, to follow his advice.

**Ex. 7. Say that you share your friend's opinion.**

Model: John is sorry he didn't join us on Sunday. → You are quite right. John wishes he **had joined** us on Sunday.

1. Mary is sorry she didn't come to the meeting yesterday. 2. Susan is sorry she broke the appointment on Saturday. 3. Jane is sorry she didn't invite Steve to her birthday party. 4. Margaret is sorry she didn't take a taxi. 5. Adrian is sorry he didn't follow his teacher's advice. 6. Geoffrey is sorry he didn't wait for Oliver. 7. Philip is sorry he refused Walter's invitation. 8. Thomas is sorry he didn't send that letter. 9. Ray is sorry he didn't help aunt Cecily. 10. Agatha is sorry she didn't stay at home that evening. 11. Anabel is sorry she didn't take part in the competition. 12. Gwendoline is sorry she didn't take her umbrella with her.

**Ex. 8. Fill in the blanks using the corresponding mood form.**

1. I wish you ... this film (saw, had seen). I am sure you would have liked it. 2. I wish you ... earlier (came, had come). You should have gone to the museum together. 3. I wish you ... time to read this article (had, had had). Now you would be able to answer all the questions. 4. I wish she ... us about the day of her arrival (informed, had informed). We should have met her at the station. 5. I wish all the students ... regularly (work, worked). They would get better knowledge and their speech would be more fluent. 6. I wish you ... N (saw, had seen). He would have told you many interesting things. 8. I wish you ... a ticket for a plane (bought, had bought). We should go there together. 9. I wish you ... with me yesterday (spoke, had spoken), I should have told you some facts and you would not feel ill at ease now.

**Ex. 9. Use the corresponding mood form instead of the infinitive in brackets.**

1. I wish you (to ring up) me yesterday. I (to have) something very important to tell you and I (to be waiting) for your call. 2. I wish you (to buy) that dress. It (to suit) you. 3. I wish I (to get) your remarks before. I should have taken them into consideration and now my work be better. 4. I wish you (to learn) the words better. You should have translated this article. 5. I wish

your friends (to ring up). You would go with them on this trip. 6. I wish your sister (to take) more care about her children. 7. I wish this book (to be read) at home. It is interesting and you will get much pleasure.

**Ex. 5. Use the corresponding mood form instead of the infinitive in brackets.**

Model: I wish you (to go) for a walk late in the evening.  
I wish you did not go for a walk late in the evening.  
I wish you never (to buy) that terrible raincoat.  
I wish I had never bought that terrible raincoat.

1. I wish I (to buy) that grey hat instead of this one. It was more expensive, but the quality was much better. 2. His words created such a stir, he wished (to utter) them but it was too late. 3. It looks like raining, I wish we (to take) our raincoats. 4. I wish you (to be) there to witness everything yourself. 5. The child is crying. I wish I (to know) how to calm her. 6. I wish you (to finish) your homework already. We could go for a walk now. 7. I wish I (to know) it was your favourite writer. I would have bought the book for you. 8. All the time she wished (not to mock) at the poor boy.

**Ex. 6. Express your wish about some future actions.**

Model A: to get the prize → I wish Mike **would get** the prize.  
Model B: not to rain tomorrow. → I wish it **wouldn't rain** tomorrow.

*Prompts:* not to snow, to stop raining, to work better next term, to make less mistakes in your next dictation, to get a good mark for your next composition, to write a better plan for another lesson, to be a success next time, not to fail your next examination, to realize the truth, to notice me, to smile at me, to look up at me, to pay attention, to listen, not to look up the answers just yet, to spend some time revising the use of the article.

**Ex. 7. Say that you are sorry you can't do something.**

Model: to swim → I wish I **could swim**.

*Prompts:* to skate, to type fast, to ski, to speak several languages, to play the piano, to sing, to dance, to knit, to sew, to read English books in the original, to play chess, to play draughts, to play volleyball, to play football, to play badminton, to paint, to draw, to play tennis, to refer to the grammar section when doing the exercise, to finish off exercise 12 on page 139, to quit smoking, to fix my car by myself, to play a musical instrument.

**Ex. 8. Correct these sentences, if necessary.**

1. I wish I would have more money. 2. John wished he hadn't sold his motorbike. 3. If only he stopped smoking – I can hardly breathe. 4. She

wishes they were at her party. 5. I had rather you went now. 6. Liz wishes she would go home now. 7. I wish I learned the violin when I was at school.

**Ex. 9. Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given.**

1. I regret not listening to the park ranger's advice. I ... the park ranger's advice (wish). 2. I think it's better for the children to stay inside in bad weather. I ... inside in bad weather (rather). 3. I don't like living in an earthquake zone. I ... somewhere else (wish). 4. Don't walk so fast, I can't keep up with you! I ... so fast, I can't keep up with you (wish). 5. I'd prefer you not to repeat what I've just told you. I ... repeat what I've just told you (rather).

**Ex. 10. Make up sentences using the subjunctive mood.**

I			we (to miss) the last train
He		lest	they (to be late) for the lecture
She	fear(s)	that	we (to catch) cold
We	feared		he (to let) us down
They			the child (to burst) into tears

**Ex. 11. Use the corresponding mood form instead of the infinitive in brackets.**

1. You must be very attentive lest you (to make) so many mistakes. 2. I shall leave a message for him lest he (to forget) about our conference. 3. I prefer to keep in the shade lest I (to have) heart troubles. 4. Shut the door or the window lest you (to have) a stiff neck. 5. Don't treat me to any ice cream lest I (to have) a sore throat. 6. We asked her to persuade her sister lest she (to refuse) our invitation. 7. Take the child from the ladder lest she (to fall and hurt) herself. 8. Put the book into your bag lest you (to lose) it. 9. Let us hire a porter lest we (to carry) such a heavy trunk ourselves. 10. She feared lest the child (to remain) blind. 11. I felt a bit uneasy lest he (to be) hurt. 12. I am afraid it (to be) late. 13. I fear that they (to come) soon. 14. I'm afraid you (to forget) all about our agreement. 15. He feared lest they (to inquire) too closely into the question. 16. She feared that I (to marry) him. 17. She felt uneasy lest he (to be) late. 18. I still feel uneasy lest sir John (to get) angry. 19. He was terrified that the rumour (to spread) about the town. 20. I'm so nervous that the boys (to go) to the beach alone. 21. Don was frightened to death that the natives (to see) him while he was in the village. 22. He was like a man who is afraid to look behind him, lest

he (to see) something there, which ought not to be there. 23. He had chosen to enlist in New York because he feared someone (to recognize) him in Chicago.

**Ex. 12. Make a suggestion why Rachel is avoiding to see me.**

Model: to ask her about Allan ! I think she fears (is afraid) lest you **should ask** her about Allan.

*Prompts:* to speak about her failure, to ask her to help you, to remind her of her debt, to see how upset she is, to speak about her brother, to make a row, to ask her to tell the truth, to accuse her of having told you a lie, to accuse her of having given false evidence, to reproach her for being greedy, to inquire too closely into the question.

**Ex. 13. Finish the sentences on the left by an object clause in the subjunctive mood using sentences on the right.**

Model: I fear | | She is late.

I fear (that) she may be late.

He worried ... | | She will forget her promise.

He worried lest she should forget her promise.

- |                            |                                  |
|----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. I feared ...            | It will soon grow dark.          |
| 2. He was afraid ...       | I saw him leave the house.       |
| 3. He felt uneasy ...      | Everybody sees he's wrong.       |
| 4. He worried ...          | He will be late.                 |
| 5. She is nervous ...      | Her dog is lost.                 |
| 6. They were in terror ... | They have made a fatal mistake.  |
| 7. I am troubled ...       | My friends won't be at home.     |
| 8. We felt frightened ...  | We have lost the way.            |
| 9. She was in terror ...   | He can misunderstand.            |
| 10. I actually dreaded ... | The children will catch measles. |

**Ex. 14. Complete the sentences by an object clause in the subjunctive mood.**

1. His emphatic tone irritated the boy and I feared that ... . 2. The man turned red. She feared lest ... . 3. Soon it began raining and I was afraid that ... . 4. It appears they fear that ... . 5. He hesitated and for a moment or two I felt uneasy lest ... . 6. She was too excited and the doctor feared lest ... . 7. I've always felt lonely, I've always felt uneasy that ... . 8. Nobody in the neighbourhood seemed to know the dead man and Jones was afraid that ... . 9. The sky is overcast again. I'm afraid ... . 10. What do you really know about the man? Aren't you afraid ..?

**Ex. 15. Complete the following sentences.**

1. It was cold and our mother advised that ... 2. It was raining. I feared lest ... 3. We did not know where to go in summer and he advised that ... 4. It was getting dark and my friend suggested that ... 5. It is about 5 o'clock. I fear lest ... 6. The concert was very interesting, I wish you ... 7. He got wet through to the bone, I fear lest ... 8. The tickets were hard to get, he insisted that ... 9. Hurry up I fear lest ... 10. He used to miss many lessons and I insisted that he ... 11. The weather was fine and he suggested that they ... 12. We had a good time at Smiths yesterday. I wish you ... 13. I was told that the Smirnovs had arrived. I suggest that we ... 14. You look so tired, I insist that you ... 15. The children went to the river. Their mother ordered that they ... 16. He told us that there were many mushrooms in the forest and suggested ... 17. Aunt Polly said that the fence would be none the worse for whitewashing and she ordered that Tom ... 18. Close the window, I fear lest the child ... 19. It was raining and I insisted that the children ... 20. The rain stopped and I suggested that we ... 21. The weather has changed for the better and my son suggested that we ... 22. It was late and he advised that we ... 23. We had such a good rest in the Crimea, I wish you ... 24. We posted the letter only yesterday. I fear lest it ... 25. They will open their exhibition in St. Petersburg, I suggest that we ... 26. They were very tired after their hard work, so I suggested that they ...

**Ex. 16. Open the brackets using the proper mood form.**

1. It was very dark and I was afraid lest the children (to lose) their way home. 2. She could sing nicely and we insisted that she (to sing) at our party. 3. They ordered that the students (to make) all the arrangements for their trip to the Alps. 4. It became cold in the open air, so the teacher ordered that the children (to put on) their warm clothes. 6. My friend suggested that we (to go) to the country for the weekend. 7. It was rather far to walk to the station, so I suggested that we (to take) a taxi. 8. This summer might be cold, so I insisted that we (to go) to the South instead of Riga. 9. The sea was rather cold, so I feared lest the children (to catch cold) swimming in the water. 10. It is odd that we (to meet) here. 11. The performance was wonderful and I insisted that my children (to go to see) it. 12. When they left I feared lest they (to be late) for the concert. 13. When she read this book she advised that this book (to be read) to my children. 14. On seeing the film she advised that we (to go, to see) it. 15. The mother insisted that her son (not to go) for a walk in such rainy weather. 16. I fear lest the weather (to change) for the worse. 17. We were afraid lest we (to be late) for the train. 18. The manager suggested that all the workers (to be paid off). 19. The dean requires that all the students (to pass) their exams in



time. 20. The passenger demanded that he (to be given) a cabin, in which there were only two berths. 21. My friend insisted that we (to be) everywhere together. 22. She wished her neighbour (not to be) so talkative. 23. He wished the discussion (not to be) so heated. 24. He had a splitting headache and wished that everybody (to leave) him alone.

**Ex. 17. Paraphrase the given sentences using the corresponding mood forms in object clauses.**

1. It is a pity you haven't seen him. 2. It is a pity he was in low spirits that night. 3. It is a pity he puts on airs. 4. It was a pity that you did not go to the Caucasus with us. 5. It is a pity that you did not come to see us yesterday. 6. The father ordered his son not to return later than at two. 7. I am afraid that he may feel tired after his journey. 8. I had a high temperature and my mother insisted on sending for a doctor. 9. She advised us to go and to see the new film as she had enjoyed it immensely. 10. My friend suggested dropping the subject, as it was unpleasant for her guests. 11. We insisted on coming to the point at once. 12. The doctors insisted on my giving up smoking.

## **Adverbial Clauses of Comparison (Manner)**

**Ex. 1. Comment on the form of the subjunctive mood. Translate the sentences into Latvian.**

1. She began fitfully to page through a magazine as if she had forgotten already Philip was there. 2. He drove into the blanket as if he had been freezing to death and pulled it carefully and precisely about him. 3. And then, if they had suddenly been turned on for him, he noticed the sounds that accompanied the rowing. 4. 'I'm sorry, Philip', she said, as if they had been talking for a long time. 5. Within a day a desk appeared there almost as if Meyers had had it hidden somewhere waiting. 6. Father is as pleased as if he had written it himself. He carries the clipping around and shows it to people. 7. His expression was musing and abstracted, as if he had just commented on something far more impersonal than the morals of his own sister. 8. The three began to talk again, as if he were not there. 9. The two men looked at each other, each reading the other's thoughts as clearly as if it had been his own mind he was looking into. 10. He had the thumb of his other hand against his wrist as if he were taking his own pulse. 11. She lay looking gently up at the ceiling, as if she saw something there that amused her faintly. 12. She folded a paper very slowly, as if this were the most serious and important thing in the world. 13. 'You come in just before the end of the year, in April', he said almost accusingly, as if she had not just told him that. 14. She did not seem surprised at his presence, as if it were the most natural thing in the world that, having once seen her, he should follow her.

**Ex. 2. Say why you dislike him.**

Model: He is not an expert on everything. → He behaves (talks, acts, speaks) as if he were an expert on everything.

*Prompts:* 1. Alex does not own the place. 2. Celia is not the brightest student in the group. 3. David does not have the right to teach me on morals. 4. Eric doesn't have friends everywhere. 5. Frank doesn't have the best collection of pictures in the world. 6. George is not the headmaster of the school. 7. Herbert does not enjoy the confidence of his group-mates. 8. James is not the best sportsman in the group. 9. Lewis can't play the piano well. 10. Martin can't be relied on. 11. Nicholas is lazy. 12. Robin doesn't study well.

**Ex. 3. Complete each sentence with *as if* (*as though*).**

Model A: (English is not her native tongue). She speaks English ... → She speaks English as if (as though) it were her native tongue.

Model B: (Jane didn't break the toy). They are looking at Jane ... → They are looking at Jane as if she had broken the toy.

1. (French is not her native tongue). She speaks French ... 2. (Animals are not people). My friend talks to her cats ... 3. (He does have a brain in his head). Sometimes he acts ... 4. (You didn't see a ghost). What's the matter? You are shaking ... 5. (John isn't her son). Mary takes care of John ... 6. (I didn't break the vase). They are looking at me ... 7. (He isn't an adult). They treat him ... 8. (He doesn't know anything about the incident). He's acting ... 9. (Money doesn't grow on trees). He buys everything he wants ... 10. (He is not a child). They treat him ... 11. (I wasn't run over by a ten-ton truck). I feel terrible. I feel ... 12. (I didn't climb Mt. Everest). When I reached the fifth floor. I was breathing ...

**Ex. 4. Fill in the blanks using the verb in brackets in the correct form.**

1. She spoke so loudly as if I ... deaf (was, were). 2. She said something so softly addressing nobody as if she ... afraid that somebody would hear her (was, were). 3. She acted at the stage so calmly as if she ... before (acted, had acted). 4. She is cross with me as if I (did her some harm, had done her some harm). 5. He looked at me so strangely as though I ... him many times before (didn't see, had not seen). 6. She looked at him so triumphantly as if she ... something very important (did, had done). 7. She was crying so bitterly and such large tears were rolling down her cheeks as though somebody ... her (offended, had offended).

**Ex. 5. Replace the infinitives in brackets by the correct form of the subjunctive mood.**

1. She sat huddled in the armchair as if the last energy (to leave) her. 2. They talked as if they (to know) each other for ever so many years and this (not to be) the first time they met. 3. She seemed greatly surprised as though she never (to see) anything of the kind before. 4. It seemed as though what was going around him (to be) of little, if any, interest. 5. Suddenly it began to grow dark as if dusk (to set) in. 6. They spoke about the book as though themselves (to be) the authors of it or (to write) many others. 7. He felt awkward as if everyone (to look) at him. 8. He looked as if he (to be going) to say something but (to change) his mind. 9. She said this as if she (to be) a great authority on the matter. 10. The leaves of the book were so yellow and worn out that it seemed as if it (to be published) a hundred years ago. 11. Fieta looked at the young man. He did not behave as though he (to do) anything wrong. 12. It was as though nothing (to happen).

**Ex. 6. Answer the following questions using the corresponding mood in adverbial clauses of comparison.**

1. What did you feel coming home after two years' absence? 2. In what manner was Tom Sawyer whitewashing the fence when he saw his friends watching him? 3. What did you feel when you learnt that you had passed your entrance examinations successfully? 4. How did you enter the classroom for the first time as a teacher? 5. What did you feel when you read your first English book in the original? 6. What does a student feel before an examination? 7. In what manner does one behave when one comes to the skating-rink for the first time?

**Ex. 7. Complete the following sentences.**

1. He always makes wonderful speeches as if ... . 2. He looked tired as though ... . 3. She knows these parts well as though ... . 4. It seemed as though ... . 5. Why are you looking at me as if ... . 6. ... as if he had never heard it before. 7. He was pale as if ... . 8. We met as though ... . 9. You look as though ... . 10. ... as though he did not notice anything around him. 11. He often cast glances at his watch as if ... . 12. She looks as though ... . 13. The man bent low as if ... . 14. It was as if ... . 15. ... as though the whole world had gone to sleep.

**Ex. 8. Paraphrase the sentences using the corresponding mood forms in adverbial clauses of comparison.**

1. He passed his hand across his face but his head did not ache. The motion was meant to disguise the fact that he was wiping tears away. 2. I did begin to eat my dinner but I had nothing to hope for. 3. 'A table for one?' – 'For

one', I said. I did not say aloud that Pyle was dead but it was almost the same. 4. The women were not singing but their voices rose and fell together. 5. 'He will not be long', she said but it did not comfort me. 6. His eyes were on a page of a newspaper but he was not already absorbed in those sad arguments. 7. He was a stout middle-aged man with an exaggerated bottom and a smooth face that did not seem to have ever needed a razor. 8. He was about thirty-five and seemed never to have been any younger. 9. Christmas there always seemed a bit ashamed of itself, it seemed to know that it was a wicked waste of money. 10. I was forced up against the navigator's back. Something of enormous weight seemed to be pressing on my chest.

## Adverbial Clauses of Purpose

**Ex. 1. Comment on the form of the subjunctive mood. Translate the sentences into Latvian.**

1. The two students talked in undertones lest the teacher should overhear what they were saying. 2. Lest you should think I am not telling you the truth, I have brought two witnesses with me. 3. I advised them to take a taxi lest they should be late for the party. 4. I wanted her to stay at home lest she should get into trouble. 5. I had to put everything in writing lest they should understand me incorrectly. 6. She spoke slowly lest we should miss some information. 7. She chose to tell him the truth lest he should be informed about it by someone else. 8. She closed the window lest she should catch a cold. 9. He drew a plan for us lest we should lose our way. 10. He turned his head away lest she should see him smile.

**Ex. 2. Replace the infinitive in brackets by the subjunctive mood forms.**

Model: 1. **Don't** let the baby play with the cup lest he (to break) it.  
**Don't** let the baby play with the cup lest he should **break** it (so that he **may** not break it).

2. I **gave** him the cup to play with so that he (to be) quiet.  
I **gave** him the cup to play with so that he might be quiet.

1. I went there yesterday so that I (to see) it myself. 2. He told me the whole story so that I (to explain) to you his behaviour. 3. He adjusted the lamp so that his face (to remain) in shadow. 4. He kept watching the large mirror, which faced the entrance so that he (to see) her the moment she entered. 5. She wound the scarf around her throat lest the damp October wind (to get) at it. 6. She stood here motionless lest she (to frighten) the deer away. 7. And whatever you do tell them nothing lest they (to get in)

first. 8. She won't object anyway lest in doing so she (to give) herself away. 9. Bring him in at once so that I (to see) my only daughter's son at last. 10. And she put the cage with the canary in his room lest he (to feel) lonely. 11. They took a short cut across the moor so that (to be) home for tea. 12. I'll ask him to take you to the station in his car lest you (to have) to walk all the way.

**Ex. 3. Ask your friend why he wants to do it.**

Model: to leave a message for your brother (to worry) → Why do you want to leave a message for your brother? – I want to leave a message for my brother lest he **should** worry.

*Prompts:* to leave so early (to miss the 11 o'clock train), to pack your bag now (to forget something), to look through the test once again (to miss some mistakes), to go for a walk so late (to have a sleepless night), to take a taxi (to be late), to invite her (to feel quite lonely), to open the window (to be stuffy in the room), to close the door (to overhear what we are saying), to accompany them (to lose their way), to ring him up (to forget about the appointment).

**Ex. 4. Answer the following questions, using the subjunctive mood in adverbial clauses of purpose.**

1. What do you do when the room is stuffy in order that it should not be? 2. What do they wrap in shops every piece of crockery for? 3. Why do we often take a taxi when we have little time left? 4. Is there any special reason why he took the precautions? 5. What is the point of keeping a notebook if your memory has not failed you so far? 6. For what purpose is the sign of danger put up in some places?

**Ex. 5. Complete the following, using the subjunctive mood in adverbial clauses of purpose.**

1. She interfered with their argument ... . 2. The hunters made a fire ... . 3. The scouts avoided using wireless ... . 4. He was in two minds whether or not he should warn them ... . 5. Put it down ... . 6. Spell out his name once more, please ... . 7. I am telling you all this ... . 8. You must have a good rest ... . 9. We are in a hurry ... . 10. Open the window lest ... . 11. Tell him about the meeting lest ... . 12. Put down my address lest ... . 13. Leave the cat alone lest ... . 14. Better take a sleeping pill lest ... . 15. Help her with the dishes lest ... . 16. Don't take that short cut lest ... . 17. Don't let him eat too many sweets lest ... . 18. I'll take my umbrella lest ... . 19. Don't tell her anything lest ... . 20. You may need a torch to explore the cave lest ... . 21. He came earlier than he had promised so that ... .

22. ... so that the children should not touch the stove. 23. I'm hurrying to the institute in order that ... . 24. All the participants were officially warned lest ... . 25. ... in order that they might be able to discuss the matter alone. 26. The teacher told them the marks and showed the papers so that ... . 27. ... so that the pupils could see what was written on the blackboard. 28. I shall close the door so that ... . 29. ... that I can work till late at night. 30. Give me your pen for a moment, so ... .

**Ex. 6. Paraphrase the following so as to use the subjunctive mood in adverbial clauses of purpose.**

1. He will have a car sent down to your place tonight to take you straight to the station. 2. Copy out the examples and study them thoroughly so as not to make mistakes in the construction. 3. They wrote her a letter to remind her of her promise. 4. The enclosure was attached to the essential text of the letter for fear of it getting misplaced. 5. You will have to close either the door or the window, otherwise there will be a draught. 6. We shall start earlier so as not to miss the train. 7. I have repeated this for you not to misunderstand me. 8. The guide marked the path carefully for the party not to get lost on their way back. 9. They spoke in a whisper so as not to wake anyone in the ward. 10. How is the picture to be packed not to be spoiled on the way? 11. They had formed a cordon round the edge to prevent the crowd from increasing. 12. I left the house to do some shopping not to interfere with Mrs Thompson's cooking. 13. Charles and I mocked at the wealthy not to envy them very much. 14. She introduced me to some girls for me not to feel lonesome. 15. John left for school ten minutes earlier than usual to post some letters for his mother. 16. Peter was pressed for time and he had to run to catch the bus. 17. Peter, you were late for school today. You must go to bed earlier tonight not to be late for school tomorrow. 18. He came a little earlier to find me at home. 19. 'I saw some waterproof hats in your window last week. Have you still got them?' 'I think there are some left. Will you take a seat for me to find them for you'. 20. Pack your things beforehand, not to forget something important in a hurry.

## **Adverbial Clauses of Concession**

**Ex. 1. Use the verb in brackets in the appropriate form of the subjunctive mood.**

1. I am prepared to gratify all your whims, however unreasonable they ... (to be). 'Mr. Penty', said the doctor ... ; 'in my experience very few people are perfectly well, although they ... they are' (to imagine). 3. Whatever your father ... once ... , today he's decay; he's age; he's everything that's

corrupt and evil (to be). 4. It was plain that however conscientious Cassilis ... , however desperately hard and intelligently he ... , he would never get his captaincy (to be, to work). 5. He had to admit to himself that whatever Miss Dobb's faults ... , she was the right sort of a girl to take to a restaurant (to be). 6. Have you realized that though you ... towns and battles, you cannot conquer a nation (to occupy). 7. The poor little woman will stand up for her brother, whatever he ... (to be). 8. We must remember that though she ... grievously in leaving her home, she is still out sister (to err). 9. But I still don't begin to understand why these people, however silly they ... about their beliefs, ... ready to risk murder (to be, to be). 10. 'I want to marry Aileen, Cowperwood repeated, for emphasis' sake. 'She wants to marry me. Under the circumstances, however you ... , you can have no real objection to my doing that, I am sure' (to feel). 11. Your father tells me you think highly of his accomplishments whatever they ... (to be). 12. ... you should never neglect a dance, however small it ... (to seem). 13. Whatever unfortunate entanglement may dear boy ... into, I will never reproach him with it after we are married (to get). 14. Later that evening, he got still another confirmation that he must be on the right track no matter what anyone else ... (to say). 15. Whatever else he ... , beyond question he was Lord Cranstoeen's brother (to be). 16. Whatever Rose ... , she is not now a responsible scholar (to be). 17. There is no flattery too gross for a male. However much you ... on your guard, however much you ... you dislike it, you will find yourself instinctively angling for female flattery and getting it. (to be, to think).

## Simple Sentences

**Ex. 1. Analyse the form of the verb in the given sentences. Translate the sentences into Latvian.**

1. If only I could have learnt it a day earlier! 2. Oh, that he knew how near he was to the object of his search! 3. If they had known the kind of man he was! 4. If we were some years younger! 5. If she had been with us! 6. Oh, were he only stronger-willed!

**Ex. 2. Express unreal wish.**

Model A: to be spring → If (only) it were spring now!

Model B: to be spring → Were it (only) spring now!

*Prompts:* to be summer, to be autumn, to be winter, to be true, to be really so, to be cooler, to be warm at the weekend, not to be so cold, not to be so hot, not to be late, not to be dark, not to be snowing, not to be raining, to be a fine day tomorrow, not to be foggy, not to be windy.

**Ex. 3. Express your regret.**

Model A: to take their advice → If I had taken their advice.

Model B: to take their advice → Had I taken their advice

*Prompts:* to telephone them, to tell the truth, to see smb off, to accept smb's invitation, to invite smb to the party, to invite smb to the dinner, to introduce them to each other, to pass the examination, to stay for dinner, to go by train, to arrive on time, to get up early in the morning, to know about smb's intention, to warn smb of time.

**Ex. 4. Use the correct form of the verb in brackets.**

1. If we (to give) thought to it at the time! 2. Oh, he (not to be) late the other day! 3. If only it (to be) true! 4. If you (can help) her! 5. Oh, that I (to realize) the importance of it before! 6. If there (to be) the slightest possibility! 7. Oh, that she never (to come) to see it again! 8. But for the promise, she never (to come). 9. If only he (to be) free this week! He (to be) your untiring guide around the city. 10. Oh, I (not to make) the mistake! Everything (to look) different now. 11. If only we (can avoid) misunderstandings!

## Revision Exercises

**Ex. 1. Replace the infinitives in brackets by the correct form of the subjunctive mood.**

1. Oh, (to be) it only good weather! 2. (to be) ours a happy journey! 3. Nobody (to leave) the boat until ordered to! 4. If they (to leave) him in peace for a little while! 5. Supposing she (not to notice) the error in time? 6. But for a lucky chance, she never (to notice) the error. 7. Everyone (to take) food enough to last him a week or so. 8. If only we (not to take) the boat and (to come) by plane! 9. I (to be) greatly disappointed not to find you in.

**Ex. 2. Make up sentences, using the following elements:**

1. I should be very much obliged to you if ... 2. If you had paid attention to what I was saying ... 3. He would have acted differently ... 4. ... if I were you. 5. Had he heard the news ... 6. If we had obtained the necessary data ... 7. Were it not a real fact ... 8. ... he would not have taken ill. 9. Could we start right off ... 10. Should you come across a reproduction of the picture ... 11. Supposing ... , what would you have answered? 12. ... should any need arise. 13. Be sure to let us know should ... 14. ... could he have anticipated the reaction to his remark. 15. If you should find it inconvenient ...



**Ex. 3. Answer the following questions.**

**A. What would you do if**

1. ... you wanted to set your son a good example? 2. ... you were invited to come to see someone on Thursday night but you were busy up to the neck? 3. ... you wished to spend a few days in the country. 4. ... you came on a short visit to London? 5. ... you suspected a friend of yours wanted to get rid of you? 6. ... you wanted to ring a friend of yours but did not know his telephone number? 7. ... you wanted to become a mining engineer? 8. ... a friend of yours were in trouble? 9. ... you had much luggage and could not hire a taxi?

**B. What would you have done if**

1. ... you had left your key at home? 2. ... a friend of yours had fallen ill? 3. ... you had not entered the institute? 4. ... you had not passed your last examination? 5. ... you had not made all the necessary arrangements for the party? 6. ... you had been deceived by your best friend? 7. ... you had had a chance to come on a short visit to England last year? 8. ... you had known your friend was in trouble? 9. ... a friend of yours had caught cold and got a high temperature? 10. ... a friend of yours had had some business to talk over with you?

**Ex. 4. Answer the following questions. Pay attention to the types of conditional sentences.**

1. How would you get in touch with the company you deal with, if you wanted a quick answer? 2. If you had heavy suitcases, would you pace up and down the platform or would you stay at one place? 3. What would you do if you were to make a report on *Dombey and Son* by Dickens? 4. What would you do, if you were on a tourist trip now? 5. What would you do if your TV set needed some slight repairs? 6. Would he have violated the law, if he had known the consequences? 7. Would you have gone sightseeing if you had been pressed for time? 8. Would you have apologized to her for your conduct if it had not been your fault? 9. What would have happened if the patient had refused to take the medicine? 10. Would he look well if he had given up smoking? 11. Would you have gone to the country last Sunday, if it had been raining all day long?

**Ex. 5. Paraphrase the sentences using the corresponding mood forms.**

1. We lost our way because the night was dark. 2. The weather was too bad otherwise we should have spent the whole day in the country. 3. The river is very deep in this place that is why we could not cross it. 4. It had a violent headache that is why I couldn't take part in the party. 5. The weather was

fine that's why we went to the forest. 6. I was very busy that day and I could not go shopping with you. 7. Your telephone was out of order, that is why I could not ring you up. 8. We lost our way that is why we were obliged to spend the night in the forest. 9. We lost our key that is why we could not enter the house. 10. You did not go in for sport that is why you became so stout. 11. You missed many lessons last year that is why you failed in the examination. 12. I was expecting my friend that is why I could not go with you to the cinema. 13. It was too late and I had to go home. 14. The river was not frozen, we could not go skating. 15. He was not sure of it, that is why he hesitated to give a definite answer. 16. She forgot to wind up her watch that is why it stopped. 17. I had no time that week that is why I could not join your excursion. 18. My luggage was so heavy that I could not carry it, that is why I had to hire a taxi. 19. The boy did not obey his mother's order, that is why she punished him. 20. My friend did not know my address, that is why he could not answer the letter. 21. She had no money with her and she could not buy a new fashionable dress. 22. He was in an awkward position, because he could not speak English. 23. There were so many people at the booking office, so I had to stand in a queue for about twenty minutes before I could get a ticket. 24. The concert was a great success, so it was not so easy to get a ticket. 25. I could not get a money order, because I left my passport at home. 26. There was no snow round here, so we did not go skiing. 27. We made friends with many of the passengers, so we did not want to leave the train.

**Ex. 6. Give situations.**

1. What would you say if I invited you to the cinema? 2. What would you do if your friend intended to visit you? 3. What would you write if you got my letter? 4. What would you say if she took your book without your permission? 5. What would the students do if it were summer now? 6. Where would you go if you were free now? 7. Whom would you see if you came to the party tomorrow? 8. Where would they go if they were on their leave now? 9. What would he say if he saw you now? 10. What would you say, if I invited you to the theatre? 11. What sports would you go in for if it were winter now? 12. What would you do if it were summer now? 13. What would you put on if it were very cold in the street? 14. What would you take if it were raining now? 15. Would you come here if it were Sunday today? 16. Would she help you if she could? 17. Would you go with us if we invited you? 18. Who would help you if you asked for help? 19. Who would give you his book if you needed it? 20. How would you have met me if you had invited me to your party? 21. What would you have written to him if you had had such an intention? 22. What would you have said if she had offended you? 23. How would you have behaved if she had invited you to her party?

**Ex. 7. Replace the infinitives in brackets by the correct form of the verb.**

1. If it (to be) all the same to me, I (not to come) and (to talk) with you. 2. (To be) there some more of us, it (to take) only a few days to get through with it. 3. If anyone (to call), I shall give him the telephone number so that he (to get in touch) with you. 4. Leave a message for me if you (not to find) me in. 5. He (not to understand) it even if he (to be given) a broad hint which none other would miss. 6. He (not to be confused, or embarrassed) even if somebody (to say) it straight into his face. 7. Both of them fell to their roles as though they (to be born) to them, as though it (to be) in their blood, as though they (to be guided) by an instinct. 8. He did not allow himself to lie down lest he (to fall) asleep. 9. They poured the water on the floor all over the room that it (to keep) cooler inside. 10. You can give an explanation by way of a footnote if it (to be required). 11. If you (to come across) an expression that you do not know, write it out, please. 12. He was very careful with his things in order that they (to last) longer. 13. He went on arguing as if he (not to hear) what I had said. 14. Whatever (to be) the motives, it is the result that counts. 15. The fishermen made the boat fast lest it (to be carried) away by the current. 16. He spoke as if he (to answer) at an examination. 17. You (not to find) the house even if you (to look) for it for another hour or so: it has been pulled down recently. 18. I don't know how to address him, I wish I (to know) his name. 19. I feel as if my head (to be) on fire. 20. If only I (to know) earlier, I (to send) you a telegram. 21. My wife says she wishes I (to be) a thousand miles away. 22. He felt as if he (to float) in the air. 23. He stared at me as if I (to ask) him something very odd. 24. At that moment she wished she (not to send) for him. 25. If I (to tell) you, you might have thought it was my choice. 26. Even if it (to be) twice as dangerous I (to carry out) my plan. 27. I wish I never (to see) you. 28. Don't look at me as if you never (to see) me before. 29. I think it (to be) natural if you (to join) them. 30. Remember her! As if I (can) forget her! 31. Then he suddenly said, 'You (to take) me to Grayhallock if I (to ask)?' 32. Don't you think it (to be) rather nice if we (to ask) her to stay on for a week as our guest? 33. 'How I wish I (to be) there with you', I said with deep regret. 34. 'Don't be sorry', she said. 'I (to be) relieved if you (to go), if it (to be) settled somehow'. 35. Well, at any rate, the weather isn't going to present difficulties. It looks as though it (to set in) fine. 36. I (to be) sure of it if I (to be) you. 37. It seemed almost improbable that a man (to go) so far beyond the limit. 38. The situation demanded that urgent and even drastic measures (to take) to prevent the epidemic from spreading all over the district. 39. The man's deep-hidden wish was that all this (to change) one day. 40. We wished that nothing (to change). 41. Her long-cherished dream was that her children (to be) well educated and (to distinguish) themselves

in some field of knowledge or activity. 42. It is high time they (to think up) something to break the routine that has gone stale. 43. Does anyone second the motion that the meeting (to adjourn)? 44. It was as if the walls (to close in) on him.

**Ex. 8. Paraphrase the following so as to use the subjunctive mood in adverbial clauses.**

1. The skis would fit you well, if properly adjusted. 2. They propped up the fence in order to keep it from falling. 3. He answered my questions as if smiling to himself at my naivety. 4. Whatever the difference, the two methods boil down to pretty much the same thing. 5. But for his intuition of a veteran hunter we should have never struck the trail. 6. He explained the thing no worse than a real expert. 7. Even repaired, the watch would not be of much use any longer. 8. He fixed the knife on a chain for fear of losing it. 9. He stood rigid and motionless as if frozen stiff. 10. You shall have to be quick in case of some new developments.

### Test Yourself

1. If I find your book, I ... call you (will, would). 2. If I had a spare ticket, I ... take you to the cinema (would, will). 3. If I ... Nick, I wouldn't have paid 10,000 for that car (had been, were). 4. If I had gone to bed earlier yesterday, I ... feel better now (would have, would). 5. John suggested that I should ... for another job (look, have looked). 6. It's time we ... home (should go, went). 7. You'd better not ... that switch. It's dangerous (touch, will touch). 8. I wish I ... what to do (have known, knew). 9. I won't be able to help you unless you ... me the whole story (tell, don't tell). 10. If you invite me to your party I ... come (will, would). 11. If she ... you, she would be able to advise you (had been, were). 12. If I had managed to repair my TV set earlier, I ... this film (could see, could have seen). 13. I will lend you the book as long as you ... it clean (keep, kept). 14. It's cold today. You'd better ... a sweater when you go out (will wear, wear). 15. It is funny that you should ... that (say, have said). 16. We were afraid lest he should ... too early (have come, come). 17. It's time the children ... in bed (had been, were). 18. Providing that he ... the book to the library, he won't be fined (returns, return). 19. If I ... him I will invite him to join us (will see, see). 20. I wish I ... yesterday (had seen, saw). 21. We'll be late unless we ... (will hurry, hurry). 22. I wish I ... them a week ago (had met, met). 23. It's raining. I should take a coat when ... go out (I, you). 24. It's time he ... the problem (solved, has solved). 25. The teacher worried lest his students ... get test bad marks (would, should). 26. I wish he ... come (will, would). 27. You'd better ... or you'll be late (go, have gone). 28. If he ... his seatbelt, he mightn't have been hurt (fastened, had fastened). 29. If it ...

fine tomorrow, we'll go for a picnic (is, will be). 30. If you ... play a musical instrument, you could help with the school orchestra (were able, could).

**Key to the Test:**

1. a; 2. a; 3. a; 4. b; 5. a; 6. b; 7. a; 8. b; 9. a; 10. a; 11. b; 12. b; 13. a; 14. b; 15. a; 16. b; 17. b; 18. a; 19. b; 20. a; 21. b; 22. a; 23. b; 24. a; 25. b; 26. b; 27. a; 28. b; 29. a; 30. b.

## Translation Exercises

### *Conditional Sentences*

**Ex. 1. Translate into English.**

**A. Use non-perfect forms to indicate present and future actions:**

1. Jums tik biepi nesāpčtu galva, ja jūs vairāk laika pavadītu svaigā gaisā. 2. Mēs, protams, ietu pastaigāties, ja nelītu. 3. Domāju, ja es būtu jūsu vietā, es izvairītos no strīdiem. 4. Es neko nevarčtu izdarīt, pat ja vļčļtos iejaukties. Bet es to negribu darīt. 5. Ja jūs varčtu nosūtīt mums telegrammu, mēs, iespējams, varčtu jūs satikt, taču apsolīt to nevaru. 6. Ja gadītos, ka man kāds piezvana, pasakiet, ka es atgriezīdos pēc desmitiem. 7. Ja man gadītos iepazīties ar āiem slavenajiem cilvēkiem, es azskatītu, ka man ioti paveicies. 8. Jūs justos labāk, ja jūs klausītu ārsta padomam. 9. Ja jūs varčtu palikt pilsčtā ilgāk, jūs, iespējams, aizietu uz vietčjo muzeju.

**B. Use perfect forms to indicate past actions:**

1. Pat ja mēs būtu atnākuāi pusstundu agrāk, mēs tik un tā būtu nokavčjuāi vilcienu. 2. Viāa nebūtu kavčjusi tik daudz stundu, ja viāa nebūtu tik biepi slimojusi. 3. Ja viāa pagājuāa nedčiā nebūtu bijis slimis, viāa būtu piedalījies sacensībās. 4. Pagājuāa nedčiā mēs būtu varčjuāi braukt ar jums uz meču, ja nebūtu salūzusi maāina. 5. Es neko par āo lietu nezīnu. Pat ja mana māsa būtu kaut ko dzirdčjusi, viāa man neko nebūtu teikusi. 6. Pat ja jūs būtu devis viāam visus nepiecieāamos norādījumus, viāa to nebūtu izdarījis labāk par jums. 7. Viāa nebūtu salauzis roku, ja nebūtu tā steidzies. 8. Ja tu man vakar būtu piezvanījis, es būtu tūlīt ielīcis grāmatu somā. 9. Ja mēs būtu zinājuāi iepriekā, ka jūs atbrauksit, mēs būtu atstājuāi jums atslčgu.

**C. Use perfect and non-perfect forms to indicate present or past actions:**

1. Ja viāa nebūtu tik izklaidīgs, viāa nebūtu atstājis viāas adresi mājās. 2. Viāa nebūtu nokritis, ja būtu gājusi uzmanīgāk. 3. Ja viāa nebūtu apmekļčjusi mūzikas stundas jau kopā bērniābas, viāa tik labi klavieres nespčļčtu. 4. Ja zčns nebūtu tik stūrgalvīgs, viāa būtu apvilcis mčteli un nebūtu saaukstčjies. 5. Ja mēs būtu viāu laikus brīdinājuāi, viāa jau būtu te. 6. Ja es viāiem būtu uzreiz pateikusi taisnību, es patreiz vairs neuztrauktos. 7. Ja viāa pagājuāa gadā būtu strādājusī kā nākas, viāa zinātu priekāmetu un saāemtu labu atzīmi.

## *Subject Clauses*

### **Ex. 2. Translate into English.**

1. Svarīgi, lai visi studenti zinātu par sapulci. 2. Nepieciešams, lai ierastos visi. 3. Vai nepieciešams, lai mēs meklētu katru jauno vārdu vārdnīcā? 4. Svarīgi, lai jūs pēc iespējas vairāk runātu angliiski. 5. Bija nolemts, ka bērnus uz salu aizvedīs ar laivām. 6. Izlēmā, ka viņš brauks projām tūlīt pēc eksāmeniem.

## *Predicative Clauses*

### **Ex. 3. Translate into English.**

1. Ēī iet, ka līs. 2. Izskatās, ka rīt būs labs laiks. 3. Jums liksies, ka jūs nekad nebūtu bijis slimis. 4. Ēī iet, ka diktāts bija grūts. 5. Liekas, viņi ir sadraudzējušies. 6. Liekas, ka viņi viens otru pazīst.

## *Object Clauses*

### **Ex. 4. Translate into English.**

- A. 1. Pēl, ka jūs draugi nepiezvanīja man. Es būtu iedevusi viņiem jūsu adresi, un jūs būtu satikušies. 2. Cik pēl, ka es nepasūtīju biietes iepriekš. Tagad man nebūtu jāuztraucas, un es varētu braukt uz staciju. 3. Pēl, ka jūs neizlasījāt afīšu. Mēs tad tagad zinātu, ko rāda teātri un aizietu uz izrādi. 4. Pēl, ka līst. Man tā grībējās iet pastaigāties. 5. Cik pēl, ka viņš patreiz slimis. Mēs kopā brauktu uz medībām. 6. Pēl, ka viņa patreiz nav pilsētā, viņa mums palīdzētu. 7. Pēl, ka viņš agrāk neko nerakstīja par savu slimību. Es būtu varējusi ieteikt viņam labu ārstu, un viss būtu beidzies bez komplikācijām. 8. Cik pēl, ka jums neizdevās pārliecināt viņu atnākt uz ējieni. Viņš būtu labi pavadījis laiku. 9. Pēl, ka viņam neizdevās iepazīties ar jūsu vecākiem. Viņš būtu iepatikušies viens otram. 10. Pēl, ka šo filmu vairāk nekur nerāda. Es atceros, ka tā us visiem atstāja lielu iespaidu.
- B. 1. Viņš lūdza, lai šo dokumentu iztulkotu līdz otrdienai. 2. Baidos, lai jūs neielastu tulkojumā kiūdas. 3. Es ierosinu, lai jūs man to iedotu pārbaudīt, kad pabeigsiet. 4. Savādi, ka viņi bija dzīvojuši vienā pilsētā un nebija tikkušies. 5. Baidos, lai mēs nenokavētu. Pasteigsimies! 6. Visi pastāvēja uz to, lai viņš izstāstītu par savu braucienu uz Londonu. 7. Nevienš neuzstāj, lai jūs strādātu visu dienu. Viņš mums piedāvāja par šo jautājumu aprunāties ar dekānu. 9. Baidos, lai viņš neatnāktu, kad mēs strādāsim, viņš mums traucēs. 10. Iedod viņam aspirīnu. Baidos, lai viņš nesaslimtu. 11. Līst. Baidos, lai tu nesamirktu. 12. Viņš pieprasīja, lai mēs darbu nodotu līdz 20. decembrim. 13. Baidos, lai viņš nepazaudētu manu grāmatu. Man tā ioti vajadzīga.

## *Adverbial Clauses of Comparison*

### **Ex. 5. Translate into English.**

1. Jūs tā iededzīs, it kā būtu pavadījis dienvienu mēnesi, bet visu vasaru. 2. Viņš izskatījās noguris, it kā sen nebūtu atpūties. 3. Viņš runāja vāciski tā, it kā visu dzīvi būtu nodzīvojis Vācijā. 4. Meitene skatījās uz viņu ar tādu pārsteigumu, it kā redzētu viņu pirmo reizi. 5. Viņa aizlika roku acīm priekšā, it kā gaisma būtu pārāk spilgta. 6. Debesis pārklājās tumšiem mākoņiem. Kiuva tumša, it kā būtu iestājies nakts. 7. Gājējs sāka iet steidzīgāk, it kā nedzirdēdams, ka viņa sauc. 8. Viņa pazina šīs vietas, it kā dzīvotu te. 9. Viņa pazīst šīs vietas, it kā būtu nodzīvojusi te daudzus gadus. 10. Viņa izskatās tā, it kā būtu kiuvusi par desmit gadiem jaunāka pa šo laiku.

## *Adverbial Clauses of Purpose*

### **Ex. 6. Translate into English.**

1. Pacel viņu, lai viņa varētu redzēt. 2. Es pasvītroju izteicienu tekstā, lai viņš to varētu tūlīt atrast. 3. Es atstādu vācstuli uz galda, lai viņa to tūlīt ieraudzītu. 4. Viņa turēja logu atvērtu, lai balodis varētu ielidot un izlidot. 5. Aizved viņu uz viņas istabu, lai varētu atpūties. 6. Es devu viņiem daudz piemēru, lai viņi saprastu, kā šo vārdu lietot. 7. Pasniedz viņam roku, lai viņš nenokristu. 8. Noliec grāmatu uz augšējā plaukta, lai bērni neaizsniegtu. 9. Aizver durvis, lai suni neizskrietu dārzā. 10. Man nekad neienāca prātā, ka viņi pieliek visas pūles, lai nesāktu smieties, klausoties manus bērniem īgos spriedelcjumus par dzīvi. 11. Jums jāseko, lai stundas laikā nerunātu pārāk ātri un nepesīkulētu.

## *Adverbial Clauses of Concession*

### **Ex. 7. Translate into English.**

1. Ģinī zālē ļoti laba akustika: kur lai jūs nesēdētu, jūs visu labi dzirdēsiet. 2. Lai kā arī viņš nebūtu bijis aizņemts, viņš vienmēr atrada laiku aiziet uz teātri. 3. Lai arī ko jūs teiktu, man šī luga nepatīk. 4. Ārsts teica: 'Lai cik arī vājā slimnieks būtu, viņš jāoperē'. 5. Lai arī kad jūs atnāktu pie manis, es vienmēr būšu priecīgs jūs redzēt. 6. Lai arī cik tumša nebūtu nakts, mums nāksies turpināt ceļu. 7. Piezvani man vakarā, lai cik vēl tu pārņāktu mājās. 8. Lai cik arī viņš nebūtu bijis uztraukts pirms stundas, patreiz viņš šī iet pavisam mierīgs.

### **Ex. 8. Translate into English.**

1. Tika nolemts, ka bērni dosies uz zooloģisko dārzu tūlīt pēc brokastīm. 2. Es vēlētos, lai te mazāk smēķētu! 3. Viņš pieprasīja, lai viņam samaksātu tūlīt. 4. Pēc, ka nepateicu taisnību. 5. Nepieciešams, lai tu paņemtu atvaļinājumu uz veselu mēnesi. 6. Es iegāju savā istabā un aizvēru durvis, lai mani neviens

kādas pāris stundas netraucētu. 7. Es vēlētos, lai šis semestris jau būtu beidzies. 8. Viņš brīdi izbījās, ka Fredis apšāpšies viņam blakus un turpinās sarunu. 9. Kaut kāds no jums man noticētu! 10. Kāds ierosināja aizsūtīt pēc ārsta. 11. Laiks irerties pie darba. 12. Mēs baidījāmies, kaut viņš nesašlimtu. 13. Par viņu vienmēr runāja trešajā personā, it kā viņas tur nebūtu klāt. 14. Viņš skatījās uz Annu, it kā nekad nebūtu redzējis šo meiteni. 15. Viņš izkātoja, lai kāds mums parādītu pilsētu. 16. Ja ne viņa darbs Britu muzeja bibliotēkā, viņš nekad nebūtu atradis šo grāmatu. 17. Viņš ieslēdza dokumentu atvilktni, lai to neviens neieraudzītu. 18. Ja ar viņu kopā nebūtu bijusi Megija, viņš būtu tiem pajautājis par tēvu. 19. Ja es viņu kādreiz vēl satiktu, es zinātu, ko darīt. 20. Cik ļoti, ka nevaru tev stāstīt par to. 21. Viņš baidījās, ka atstās sliktu iespaidu. 22. Cik ļoti, ka neredzēji šo vēstuli. 23. Es uzstāju, ka mums ņeit jāpaliek. 24. Tēvs izlēma, ka dēlam jāstudē tieslietas. 25. Jums laiks viņu modināt. 26. Man piedāvāja uzrakstīt recenziju par šo grāmatu. 27. Es paslēpu laikrakstu zem spilvena, lai Marks to neieraudzītu. 28. Ja ne viņa smaids, man nebūtu radušās aizdomas.

---

## THE VERBALS

---

### The Participle

#### Participle I

**Ex. 1. State the forms of Participle I. Translate the sentences into Latvian.**

1. Gladys stood for a long while looking out at the bay from the bedroom window. 2. He wasn't asked to take on the chairmanship of the society, being considered insufficiently popular with all members. 3. Having been told that bad weather was on the way, the climbers decided to put off their attempt on Eiger until the following week. 4. Students have six weeks teaching practice in the 4<sup>th</sup> year and eight weeks in the 5<sup>th</sup>. 5. Having witnessed the crime, he was expected to give evidence in court. 6. Having (now) heard your side of the question, I am more inclined to agree with you. 7. Having finished the painting, he gave a sigh of relief. 8. Deciding that it would be hopeless to carry out a search while the fog persisted, the rescue party put off their rescue bid until the next day. 9. Having had some experience in these matters, I think my advice could be of help. 10. He stayed there, chatting and giving her a hand with things, for over an hour.



11. And then she glanced quickly at Ray as if seeking to see whether it was all right for her to laugh a little. 12. Judging by what critics say, this new play is worth seeing. 13. Frankly speaking I'm not quite sure how to do it.

**Ex. 2. Replace the infinitive in brackets by the correct form of Participle I.**

1. (to reject) by the editorial board, the story was returned to the author for revision. 2. (to reject) by publishers several times, the story was accepted by a weekly magazine. 2. (to wait) for some time in the reception room, he was asked into the office. 4. (to wait) in the reception room, he thought over what he would say when he was asked into the office. 5. They reached the peak at dusk, (to leave) their camp with the first light. 6. They put up for the night at a temporary camp, (to leave) it at dawn. 7. The friends went out into the city (to leave) their cases at the left luggage department. 8. (to write) and (to leave) a note with the porter, he said he would be back in a half-hour. 9. (to write) in an archaic language, the book was difficult to read. 10. (to write) his first book, he could not go far beyond his own experience. 11. (to be) away so long he was happy to be coming back. 12. (to be) so far away he still felt himself part of his community. 13. The children looked wonderingly at the elephant, never (to see) such a huge animal. 14. Not (to want) to go deeper into the matter, he abruptly changed the conversation. 15. Once (to make) up his mind, he never changed it. 16. I stood for a moment at the window, (to look) at the gaiety of the day. 17. (to finish) his toilet, he wrapped himself in a thick overcoat and wound a muffler round his neck. 18. And (to reach) the conclusion, he gave no further thought to the matter. 19. And then when the table (to set) for and dinner brought in, he put aside his book and gave her a glance ... she was startled ... . 20. He peered at her, (to blink). 21. He got out of his seat and walked over and stood in front of Janet and Mary, (to look) down at them. 22. ... he writes a long letter to his critic, (to tell) him he is very sorry he thought his book was bad. 23. His father, (to retire), lived in an unpretentious, but not mean, house. 24. (to revolve) these and ... other matters in my mind, I went mechanically on my round. 25. It was about ten o'clock at night; I had been dining by myself at a restaurant, and (to return) to my small apartment, was sitting in my parlour, reading. 26. (to ruffle) his grizzled hair with an affectionate hand, she remained for a while in silent meditation. 27. He decided to speak to her in the train (to come) home. 28. The next minute ... the front door was flung open and he was in the lighted hall (to welcome) ... by a short, plump, smiling woman of about forty ... . 29. It was not so much the fact that, (to invite) down to this place for a ... visit, he found himself requested by his host to go and tell his uncle bedtime stories. 30. I came down here, (to hope) that I would get over it. 31. She drank deeply, and,

(to do) so, sighed with satisfaction. 32. Again the hands rose eloquently, (to express) better than words could do Mr. Hercule Poirot's sense of utter outrage. 33. Sam, feeling that the interview, (to reach) this point might be considered over, got up.

**Ex. 3. State the functions of Participle I.**

1. I read it to her twice. Each time she listened carefully, giving her comments. 2. She was walking slowly, searching the faces of the passing students, looking for Philip. 3. 'Yes', she said, not smiling, only looking gravely at him still from her great dark eyes as if she could read the thoughts in his head and neither admitted nor denied them. 4. He rowed tirelessly, pulling with increasing strength as the motion became more comfortable. 5. He heard her coming up the stairs, heard her moving along the hallway, heard her stop and look in on Bentley as she always did to be sure he was not still sitting at his desk studying. 6. He thought he heard her laughing, but it might have been the echo of the coffee cup breaking against the stillness of the night. 7. When she saw Philip standing alone, staring at her from across the room, her face lighted. 8. He fanned the card, drying the excess of ink, looking for a place to put it. 9. Having overheard part of their conversation, I thought it best to remain hidden until they had left. 10. She shivered with fright as if realizing the danger. 11. To stay here will be exciting. 12. He did not move, as though waiting for a further question from me. 13. Hearing the bell she ran to open the door. 14. Arriving at the airport, he went to have his luggage registered. 15. Judging by the words he is a true friend. 16. He was silent for a while as though pausing for a reply. 17. He said it as if thinking aloud. 18. Strictly speaking, the Isle of Man is not part of the United Kingdom. 19. Judging from recent events, the Government appears to be gaining in popularity.

**Ex. 4. Recast the following sentences so as to use Participle I instead of attributive clauses.**

1. To hide the tears, which were coming from her eyes she turned away and walked homewards. 2. Going upstairs she woke the woman who lived on the floor above her. 3. She went with her long, rigorous stride to the steps that led down from Oxford Street. 4. They got into the car, which smelt of hot leather and petrol. 5. It was very dark with a gusty wind and a fine spatter of rain, which blew into their faces at street corners. 6. I don't suppose he ever lived in a house that had a bathroom till he was fifty. 7. I noticed as we walked along the street that sometimes the men who passed us stared at my girlfriend. 8. It was a long, wide, straight street that ran parallel with the Vauxhall Bridge. 9. He followed her across the lawn to the table, which stood in the shade of a fine tree. 10. He saw in the garden a

solemn young man in a brown suit who was striding up and down the lawn. 11. The ship, which had arrived at the dock that afternoon, had taken fourteen days to cross the Atlantic. 12. I caught sight of a lean man of mournful appearance, who was moving in the opposite direction. 13. In the interval, which had elapsed since his parting from Mr. Brown a striking change had taken place in his appearance. 14. He looked up. Over the fence, which divided the garden from the one next door a familiar face was peering. 15. The photograph, which had so excited the young man, was the large one that stood in the centre of the mantelpiece. 16. I had said all that I had to say on the subject that had brought me there. 17. He was never at a loss for a remark; he could discourse on the topics of the day with an ease that prevented his hearer from experiencing any sense of strain. 18. A channel is a stretch of water, which separates two bodies of land. 19. The Victoria Lane, which runs from Victoria to Walthamstow, was opened in March 1969. 20. Motorists who intend to take their cars with them to the Continent are advised to make early reservations. 21. All aliens who are already living in this country have been asked to register with the police. 22. The school has now moved to new premises, which overlook the Thames. 23. We came up to the man who was standing at the corner and asked him the way. 24. Anyone who wished to leave early may do so. 25. The boy who is sitting in the corner is my nephew. 26. Anyone who knows anything about the crime is asked to communicate with the police. 27. The newspaper has now published an apology in which it was stated that their earlier reports were quite wrong. 28. The game keeper caught a man who was shooting ducks out of season.

**Ex. 5. Join the pairs of sentences, using Participle I as an adverbial modifier of time.**

Model: The pilot was flying over the Channel. He saw what he thought to be a meteorite. → While **flying** over the Channel, the pilot saw what he thought to be a meteorite.

1. He was taken ill. He was travelling by air from New York to London. 2. I visit a strange city. I like to have a guidebook with me. (Use: when). 3. He did his homework. Then he went to the skating-rink. 4. He was reading those books. He came across an old and valuable map. 5. The customer had picked up several articles as if he intended to buy them. He put them all down again. 6. The workmen were digging the foundation of a new office block. They unearthed the remains of a Roman villa. 7. She looked out of the window. She saw the neighbour's children planting a tree. 8. He seized a sheet of paper and a pen. He began to write. 9. She was thanked for help. She said 'You are welcome'. 10. He entered the room. He took off his hat.

**Ex. 6. Recast the following sentences so as to use Participle I instead of adverbial clauses.**

1. While Alec had many loyal friends, he also had enemies. 2. Liza, when she was left alone, began to turn things over in her mind. 3. I saw a light in your window as I was passing. 4. Though I felt sorry for him I could not help laughing. 5. When I heard he was in town, I used to send a boy to find him and make him come to dinner with me. 6. When he had finished his tea, Andrew left the kitchen. 7. When Jack reached Andrew he gave a theatrical start of recognition. 8. When he got to Euston he paid off the taxi and inquired for the next train to Dover. 9. When I went upstairs, I found him asleep, with all his clothes on. 10. 'I knew Tom well', he said, as he leaned back in his chair and lit the cigar, I had offered him. 11. When I arrived, a little late, I found the party already complete. 12. When his first picture was exhibited they came to Amsterdam to see it, his father and his sister and his mother, and his mother cried, when she looked at it. 13. And while she waited for him to come, her pride began revolting. 14. After we left the bears, we left the Zoo and crossed over this little street in the park. 15. As Andrew pulled on his coat he reflected miserably that he had not exchanged a word with Ada. 16. After the uncle had once consented to the boy's going out with the Browns, he made no further objection to his association with them.

**Ex. 7. Join the pairs of sentences, using Participle I as an adverbial modifier of cause (reason).**

Model: They decided to re-visit St. Petersburg. They were struck by the beauty of its buildings on their previous visit. → They decided to re-visit St. Petersburg **having been struck** by the beauty of its buildings on their previous visit.

1. You have promised to give him every assistance. You cannot go back on your word. 2. We decided not to go any further that day. We put up at the nearest hotel. 3. He had been forbidden to read the book. He was even more anxious to get hold of a copy. 4. He turned down the job he was offered. He was reluctant to commit himself to a long contract. 5. She had decided it was a proper thing to do. She was surprised when she got absolutely no results. 6. The champion decided to withdraw from the tennis tournament. He had decided that he had little chance of winning the competition. 7. We had heard nothing further from him. We assumed he wasn't coming. 8. I bear in mind the fact that he has never done anything wrong before. I think he should be let off with a caution. 9. He was not surprised to see her. He had been informed about her arrival.

**Ex. 8. Say why Mary was treated so.**

Model: kind-hearted (to love and admire) → **Being** a kind-hearted girl, she was loved and admired by everybody.

*Prompts:* clever (to respect), beautiful (to admire), good-natured (to love), generous (to praise), brave (to speak of with approval), friendly (to invite to dinner parties), reasonable (to respect), sensible (to praise).

**Ex. 9. Say why you failed to do it.**

Model: her address (to visit her when I was in Kiev) → Not **knowing** her address, I couldn't visit her when I was in Kiev.

*Prompts:* her telephone number (to ring her up), the contents of the book (to take part in the discussion), where they lived (to send them a telegram), French (to understand what they were talking about), how to get in touch with them (to invite them to the party), the contents of the film (to describe the main character).

**Ex. 10. Write down the sentences in which both casual and temporal implications are intended. Put questions, beginning with *why* and *when*.**

1. Finding himself short of petrol the motorist drew up at the next filling station. 2. Having gone into the question of how much the holiday would cost, they decided to stay at home. 3. Discovering that he had a talent for music, the shop assistant gave up his job to become a professional singer. 4. Learning that his newspaper had been taken over by a rival publisher, the editor resigned from his position. 5. Having finished the exercise, he gave a sigh of relief. 6. The man lost interest in his work, having been passed over in favour of an outsider when a senior position became vacant. 7. Having been hit by a huge wave, the rowing boat turned over. 8. Having been told what English food is like, they decided not to spend their holidays in England.

**Ex. 11. Complete the following using participial phrases from the list below.**

1. I remained in the garden ... . 2. She came into the kitchen ... . 3. He shook my hand ... . 4. Suddenly she rose and went to the front door ... . 5. He held out his hand ... . 6. I could not help laughing ... . 7. He left the room ... . 8. He laughed merrily ... . 9. He got up ... . 10. He grasped her hand ... .

*Phrases:* smiling happily; enjoying the gayety of the day; having nothing more to say; putting on her apron; while reading that story; fancying that she heard a knock; feeling that the interview was over; turning to his sister; advancing towards me; shutting the door behind him.

**Ex. 12. Make up sentences using the following phrases with Participle I in the function of an adverbial modifier.**

1. working regularly;
2. looking at his watch;
3. disapproving of her behaviour;
4. wishing to get home in time;
5. when listening to the report;
6. going straight to the telephone;
7. enjoying the quiet of the evening;
8. laughing and singing;
9. having enquired the way;
10. not seeing;
11. having quarrelled;
12. smiling at one another;
13. taking no notice;
14. not knowing;
15. jumping up from her seat;
16. glancing up at the clock;
17. while skating;
18. leaping from the taxi;
19. having ordered from the menu;
20. when speaking about his books.

## **Participle II**

**Ex. 1. Define the function of Participle II.**

1. Rosie looked round with delight at the great dark smoky house crowded to the ceiling with the inhabitants of South London.
2. Carried away by the melody, Marie went so far as to dance a step or two herself.
3. 'Let's skate again', she said, 'shall we? With crossed hands'.
4. They had gazed sadly on the pitted surface of the once smooth lawn.
5. Sam looked up, relieved.
6. Dear Old Bates was standing in the lighted doorway.
7. I had been seated at the desk a long time, lost in thought.
8. Again there was a silence in the wooden shed, broken only by the drumming of the rain upon the tin roof.
9. I laughed, embarrassed, but not wholly displeased with the role thrust upon me.
10. Mr. Wrenn, startled, dropped his hat.
11. Embarrassed he didn't know what to say.
12. Poirot shook his head in a dissatisfied manner.
13. With a smile he looked across at Christine, seated on the opposite seat.
14. Surrounded by difficulties and uncertainty, he longed for Christine.
15. The owner was a half-caste named Horn, with a native wife surrounded by little brown children, and on the ground floor he had a store where he sold canned goods and cottons.
16. Given time, he'll make a first-class tennis player.
17. I couldn't understand the instructions given in the manual.
18. Leave the car with me. I'll have it put right.
19. He kept the dog chained up.
20. He left his bicycle propped against a wall.
21. Based on a deep analysis, the report was of great value.
22. The police found the money hidden in a disused garage.
23. Seen in this light, the matter is not as serious as people generally suppose.
24. Convinced that his luck must eventually turn if he persisted long enough, he decided to have another try.
25. The woman reminded him of a lovely and startled forest animal.
26. People were happy to spend a night or a vacation surrounded by the cool ocean breeze.
27. She sounded disappointed.
28. He was surprised, then delighted with the clear and practical approach she took in aiding him.
29. He just seemed bored with what he was doing.
30. I searched the desk and discovered the letter hidden under a pile of papers.

**Ex. 2. Replace the attributive clauses by phrases with Participle II in the function of an attribute.**

Model: Stress is the force which is given to a word or syllable in speech. → Stress is the force **given** to a word or syllable in speech.

1. In recent textbooks stress which is accompanied by a high falling pitch is indicated by a short slant line / /. 2. The great majority of examples which are included in this book are typical of spoken English. 3. The list which is given on page 275 includes numerous authoritative books on these subjects. 4. The symbols which are used in this book are explained below. 5. The key to exercises which is provided at the end of the book makes it suitable for students, working on their own. 6. The aim which is set in this book is to provide a variety of material for foreign students at advanced level. 7. This book must be returned on the date which is last marked below. 8. The victory over the fascists which was gained at the cost of immense sacrifice saved the world from slavery. 9. The suggestion which was made by the chairman was accepted unanimously.

**Ex. 3. Replace the attributive clauses in the following sentences by phrases with Participle II where possible.**

1. The animals that were caught in the snare struggled furiously. 2. There was a peculiar silence in the room, which was broken only by the crackle of paper. 3. The melancholy tune which is being played by the band brings back all the sweet memories of my youth. 4. The long-playing records that are produced by the local factory are of exceptional fine quality. 5. He specialized in treating occupational lung diseases, which are mainly caused by dust. 6. And the answer that had so long been expected came at last. 7. The newspapers carried reports of a storm that had devastated several villages. 8. The machinery which has been ordered from abroad will be delivered by ship. 9. The opinions that were (are) expressed by the critics greatly differ.

**Ex. 4. Change the sentences using Participle II in the subordinate adverbial clauses.**

Model: When they were told how much the trip would cost, they decided to stay at home. → When **told** how much the trip would cost, they decided to stay at home.

1. Though she was surprised by his arrival, she did not show it. 2. When he was told the price, he put the shirt back on its place. 3. When he was asked for help, he feigned illness. 4. Though he was hurt by her attitude, he did not show it. 5. If he were given an opportunity, he would make a good pianist. 6. Her new dress fitted her as though it were made to her measure-

ments. 7. When the modal verb *must* is used with the Perfect Infinitive of the main verb, it has a past time reference. 8. If he is given time, he'll make the first-class chess player. 9. When the boy was left to himself, he took his toys and began to play. 10. Though he was annoyed by his failure, he continued to work hard.

**Ex. 5. Insert Participle I or II.**

1. It was a windy day, and the air ... in Little Dorrit's face soon brightened it. (to stir) 2. He took a ... strip of paper from his vest and gave it to the reporter. (to fold) 3. There was one bright star ... in the sky. (to shine) 4. He reminded you of a ... sheep ... aimlessly hither and thither. (to frighten, to run) 5. At one end was a group of beautiful women exquisitely ... , ... diamonds on their heads and bosoms. (to gown, to wear) 6. Maxim stooped, and picked up a ... petal and gave it to me. (to fall) 7. They came to the quiet little station ... by a single bulb, almost ... in a mass of oleander and vines and palmettos. (to light, to hide) 8. She remained silent but her silence was like a question ... in the dark between them. (to hang) 9. With ... eyes he leaned back on the bench. (to close) 10. We walked down the hall and down the wide thickly ... stairs. (to carpet) 11. There were ... candles on the table. (to light) 12. There was a long line of ... trucks and carts on the road ... up the bridge. (to abandon, to lead) 13. A tall, thin man with a sharp pointed face sat at a table ... for dinner. (to lay) 14. The voice had something ... in it. (to appeal) 15. There was a balcony along the second floor ... by the columns. (to hold up) 16. On the next afternoon Horace went out to his sister's, again in a ... car (to hire)

**Ex. 6. Fill in the blanks with Participle II or Participle I (passive) of the verb in brackets.**

1. a) The monument ... on this square has been recently unveiled. b) The monument ... on this square will be soon unveiled (to erect).
2. a) We could hear the noise of furniture ... upstairs. b) For a moment they sat silent ... by the story (to move).
3. a) I cannot forget the story ... by him. b) They listened breathlessly to the story ... (to tell).
4. a) One can't fail to notice the progress ... by our group during the last term. b) These are only a few of the attempts now ... to improve the methods of teaching adult students (to make).
5. a) We live at a time of outer space ... by man. b) 'I wish I could live to see outer space ... by man', said the old professor (to conquer).

**Ex. 7. Use Participle II instead of Participle I where possible.**



1. Having been wounded in the leg, he limped a little. 2. Being badly wounded he recovered slowly. 3. The boy was wearing a cap similar to those being worn by other jockeys at the stables. 4. The importance of the experiment being made is that it may lead to a discovery of great consequence. 5. Having arrived in a big seaport, I started to look for a job. 6. By this time, having acclimated himself to the atmosphere of the new place, he no longer felt a stranger. 7. Having slept two hours, I felt refreshed and rested. 8. Having been once found on the beach, the stone served now as a paperweight and was one of the table's decorations. 9. Being sung by the voice of this unseen girl, the strain brought back to me long forgotten memories. 10. Having completed all our preparations, we hired a cab and hurried off. 11. Being completed, the parts were transported to the assembly shop. 12. When the young people, having returned from their day's outing, came into the dining room, they found dinner ready and served. 13. Not having been approved of by an overwhelming majority of the members of the committee, the proposal was turned down. 14. Never having experienced such difficulties, he was at a loss. 15. Rain is very rare in our parts, but having once begun, it won't stop for days on end.

**Ex. 8. Compose sentences out of the given parts. Pay attention to the place of the participle.**

1. left, gaily, the company, the café, chattering. 2. the bus, will arrive, at noon, you, in time, leaving, to catch. 3. arrived, the telegram, promised, never. 4. a guide, experienced, was finding, chief, good, the difficulty. 5. at the branches, in the darkness, slowly, stared, moving, the girl. 6. showed, the enemy, no resistance, surrounded. 7. flooding, the water, came, the valley. 8. cleaning, the person, inside the building, was, only, a charwoman. 9. they, into the ticket, soon, the boundary, moved, reaching. 10. passing over, to any decision, the matter, dropped, not having come, the committee, to the next item. 11. asleep, the boy, slipping, immediately, fell, into bed. 12. sleeping, the child, was, on his back, lying. 13. to him, smiling, turned, she, her face. 14. with a frown, I, at him, perplexed, looked. 15. no answer, we, receiving, a cable, sent.

**Ex. 9. Specify the syntactical function of the participles, using the conjunctions *when, while, if, as if, as though, though, unless, until, once, as*.**

1. She was about to take a step, which, ... mistaken, might lead to further complications. 2. ... so occupied, he vaguely gathered the impression of somebody darting silently across the road. 3. The man stood still for fully a minute ... debating with himself. 4. I think we now may regard the matter ... settled. 5. A promise accounts to little ... kept. 6. ... resolved to do

something, he wouldn't swerve. 7. ... proofread several times the text contained a number of misprints. 8. It can't go to press ... signed by the editor. 9. She screamed ... badly hurt. 10. ... waiting for you I have looked through all the newspapers and magazines. 11. Your assistant called you leaving a message where he could be found ... needed. 12. The article described him ... having attempted nearly every kind of writing and ... adorning them all. 13. He did not hurry ... pressed for time. 14. He was in a hurry ... pressed for time. 15. He wouldn't hurry ... pressed for time.

## Predicative Constructions with the Participle

**Ex. 1. Point out objective predicative constructions with Participle I in the following sentences. Translate the sentences into Latvian.**

1. I saw him walking briskly through the crowd wearing a tan raincoat ... 2. She could hear Bart moving about outside, whistling as he worked. 3. ... he felt his heart pounding and his mouth was dry again, but it was excitement, not fear. 4. I've seen her sitting poring over her pass book. 5. With a neat push Poirot sent him staggering down the steps. 6. 'I hear you've seen Blanch', he said. 'How on earth did you find out?' 'I was told by someone who saw you sitting with them'. 7. He felt Bill coming up to the fire. 8. He leaned back watching Jan working with passionate absorption on the pullover ... 9. ... but I could hear two people talking in the room. 10. Aswald could feel his heart beating. 11. Then I heard someone weeping. 12. In the silence I could hear the clock ticking. 13. Then she heard the stranger laughing quietly, and his footsteps came across the room. 14. He found her watering some plants, her face expressed her surprise at his unusual presence. 15. At his home, he let himself in, and to his surprise, found his wife coming towards him in the hall. 16. They could hear the Invisible Man breathing. 17. Then she noticed another figure standing looking after the barge that was making for Thebes ... 18. Mike saw him standing in the doorway. 19. Then her charming face grew eager, and glancing round, young Jolyon saw Bosinney striding across the grass.

**Ex. 2. Point out subjective predicative constructions with Participle I in the following sentences. Translate the sentences into Latvian.**

1. He was seen making his way to the house. 2. Here the nurse's voice was heard calling from the top landing. 3. Many students with blood streaming down their faces were seen running down the side streets to avoid arrest. 4. He suffered from dyspepsia, and he might often be seen sucking a tablet of pepsin ... 5. At times he was seen driving with her by people who knew

him in a social and commercial way. 6. The boots of Albert could be heard racing upstairs. 7. You're found hanging around the grounds of a big house after dark ... . 8. ... in a few moments during the launching of the boats, Danvers was seen speaking to a young American girl. 9. Jennie was seen wearing the gold watch. 10. While Miss Cutler was in the room dispensing vermilion bacon, the day's post could be heard arriving. 11. He could often be seen walking with his eyes fixed anxiously on little Pablins Dartie's sailing boat.

**Ex. 3. Define the type of predicative constructions with Participle I.**

1. The car paused momentarily at the door of the commissary. Pat saw blank eyes staring at him and he stared back at them blankly from the rear seat. 2. Cokane and Sartorius are seen returning by the river gate. 3. I saw her going off in that direction about a quarter of an hour ago. 4. One Yankee businessman had been overheard asking the police why they didn't use tear-gas ... . 5. In a moment I heard Stroeve's voice asking if I was in. 6. He braced himself against the slope and felt his feet moving within his swollen boots. 7. And in the slight pause young Nickolas was heard saying gently that Violet ... was taking lessons in pastel ... . 8. He watched them eating, and decided that they ate like pigs. 9. My door happened to be ajar, and I heard her talking to some one in the passage. 10. Shut up in her room she could be heard chattering away hour after hour ... . 11. I don't feel their absence, I don't want them weeping around my deathbed and being polite about me afterwards, which I believe is the general notion. 12. Don't you remember, I said yesterday I'd overheard two people talking about a female called Jane Finn? 13. He felt his head trembling slightly with rage as he said this. 14. He could hear his wife breathing quietly, asleep. 15. She could hear him telephoning, stressing the gravity and urgency of the case. 16. I wondered if that was the reason I used to hear my father pacing up and down in his room long after the rest of the house had gone to bed. 17. It set her heart leaping ... . 18. The hot east wind drove the flames, whipped them up and sent them racing.

**Ex. 4. Define the meaning of the verb with which objective predicative constructions with Participle I are used.**

1. Passing into the picture gallery, as it was still called, he saw Irene standing nearby. 2. It set him thinking. 3. We may suppose him representing the England of Napoleon's wars, and general unrest. 4. Well, I don't want you coming here and telling me I'm untidy ... . 5. In her ears there rang on a sudden the outrageous and unaccountable laughter that had sent Miss Warren flying from the room. 6. I thought I saw something moving along the track. 7. But he found his traps waiting for him in the porter's lodge ... . 8.

I opened the door with extreme reluctance and found Morton standing outside. 9. The four soldiers noticed Christian watching them. 10. She ran up the drive ... and I heard her fumbling for the key. 11. From where she stood she could hear everything going on at once. 12. I heard the guards moving behind us. 13. I remember him saying: 'What are you looking for, Frank?' 14. I felt him looking at me now and again, but I took no notice. 15. ... their ears spread wide to hear the first noise that would send them rushing into the bush.

**Ex. 5. Speak with your friend about the noisy night you had at the hotel during your latest trip.**

Model: (Tired and irritated): The wind whistled (all night)! → I heard it **whistling**, but it didn't keep me awake. (or: I didn't hear it whistling).

*Prompts:* 1. The windows rattled! 2. The stairs creaked! 3. The tap dripped! 4. The clock struck the quarters! 5. People in the street screamed! 6. Traffic roared past! 7. Doors banged! 8. The man upstairs snored! 9. Voices called for help! 10. The mice squeaked!

**Ex. 6. Speak with your friend who expressed horror at the behaviour of people in the town she visited.**

Model: They cross the road under the red light! → But you see people **crossing** the road under the red light in our city too.

*Prompts:* to ignore pedestrian crossing, to hang washing out of their windows, to elbow their way onto buses, to crash the lights, to drive much too fast, to jump the queue, to push their way through, to write on the walls, to drop litter in the streets.

**Ex. 7. Say that you'll not allow them to do it.**

Model: to do it → I won't (can't) **have you doing** it.

*Prompts:* to force your views on everyone else, to take away reference books from the study, to tell lies, to cheat at the lesson, to miss your lessons, to put off till tomorrow what you can do today, to speak to me in such a tone, to be rude to me, to act unwisely, to keep bad companies.

**Ex. 8. Have a talk with your instructor.**

Model: to swim → How long will it take me to learn to swim?  
– I'll **have you swimming** by the end of the next month.

*Prompts:* to skate, to dance, to dive, to sail, to ski, to write shorthand, to type, to read music, to cook, to play the flute, to talk English, to knit.

**Ex. 9. Form objective predicative constructions with Participle I out of the elements in brackets.**

1. ... he saw (a young girl, to be driven) away from the door in tears. 2. I turned my head over my shoulder and saw (she, to stand) in front of the house. 3. He felt (her eyes, to rest) on him with a strange, touching look. 4. Renata watched (he, to smoke). 5. That set (one's heart, to thump). 6. It would never do for her to come out and see (he, to talk) there with them. 7. Why on earth didn't you send (Strickland, to pack). 8. And Michael saw (his father-in-law, to stare up) at the Lincoln statue. 9. Jolly was anxious that they should see (he, to row) so they set forth to the river. 10. June saw (Soames, to stand) just behind her. 11. Wilkins had heard (we, to row), and looked at me, and motioned me on. 12. Yet their conviction that they had that very moment heard (somebody, to move) in the room had amounted to a certainty. 13. She thought she heard (he, to groan). 14. You'd only to see (she, to look) at him when she was off guard. 15. Giving a side glance at Betty, he saw (she, to watch) him with a warm look of admiration. 16. I could feel (my breath, to tremble) as we drove along and I could feel (she, to look) at me too. 17. Even in that first meeting I felt (he, to give) me some of his own courage.

**Ex. 10. Paraphrase the following using objective predicative constructions with Participle I.**

Model: The children were running towards the forest (she, to see).  
She saw the children running towards the forest.

1. She was looking round eagerly (he, to see). 2. She was watching him (he, not to see). 3. Someone was shouting (I, to hear). 4. The water was sucking at the piles beneath the house (they, to hear). 5. She was scrutinizing me closely (I, to see). 6. My cheeks were going red (I, to feel). 7. His ears were glowing (he, to feel). 8. Her little maid was starching and pleating her linen dresses ... (she, to watch). 9. The gardeners were watering beds of young lettuce (he, to watch). 10. My sister was signalling to me from another table (I, to see). 11. The corner of a three-penny detective novel was protruding from Albert's pocket (he, to note). 12. The rain drops were pattering against the leaves (I, to hear). 13. His father was moving around in the living room (he, to hear). 14. He was hurrying through the hot June forenoon, up the hill and on to the open downland (they, to imagine). 15. He was standing there, the light glittering on his spectacles, his white cruel face expectant (they, to see). 16. He was waiting about five minutes (they, to keep). 17. They were sitting in the sunshine (she, to find).

**Ex. 11. Complete the following so as to use objective predicative constructions with Participle I.**

1. They watched the children ...
2. He didn't see her ...
3. I didn't notice you ...
4. He liked to watch his father ...
5. He found himself ...
6. I've never heard you ...
7. I didn't see anybody ...
8. The girl saw someone ...
9. The blow sent the boy ...
10. He watched the theatre crowd ...
11. The wind sent the leaves ...
12. She watched the car ...
13. She heard the footsteps ...
14. I saw the door ...
15. She heard the children ...
16. He felt her ...
17. Did you overhear them ... ?
18. We imagine them ...

**Ex. 12. Make up sentences using the following objective predicative constructions with Participle I.**

1. him listening;
2. the children playing;
3. the waves rolling;
4. them talking;
5. her looking round;
6. the crowd streaming;
7. the door slamming open;
8. him waiting outside;
9. her poring over a book;
10. you sitting here;
11. someone weeping;
12. the clock ticking;
13. a figure standing;
14. Pete working;
15. a voice saying;
16. my mother washing;
17. the box rattling down;
18. him smoking;
19. her grandmother knitting.

**Ex. 13. Recast the following sentences so as to use objective predicative constructions with Participle I.**

1. I noticed that now his eyes were resting on me with a faint smile of amusement.
2. At the corner of the street I now saw that a small crowd was collecting, attracted by the fire.
3. So as I strode now along Bake street I felt that I was doing something useful ...
4. Then Frank's eyes lit up, he saw that Martha was cutting a cake, cutting an enormous wedge of plum cake.
5. When I opened my eyes I saw the others were dozing so I sneaked out.
6. I noticed that Constance was sitting close against Freddy's chair, and that he broke across what he was saying.
7. I could see that Dave was still standing in the doorway.
8. I felt I was getting hot under the collar, and all romantic humour was gone.
9. When he got on the sand he saw that Arthur was looking at the boat.
10. He could see that a man was standing on the pavement, facing the swing doors.
11. When he opened the window he heard how the birds were singing in the garden.
12. In a minute or two I noticed that her eyes were stealthily peeping at me over the book.
13. I could feel that the room was rocking under my feet.

**Ex. 14. Point out predicative constructions with Participle II and define their structure.**

1. Bart watched Chilla engulfed by his family and then saw them go, too, unchallenged.
2. They've got me cornered.
3. I had it all planned.
4. He distinctly heard the Boers sympathized with, the British Government blamed.

5. She kept her eyes fastened upon her plate. 6. He kept his eyes fixed on mine till I had finished, and then he turned away. 7. I saw her stretched out beside in the dust, her eyes glittering, and she wrinkled her nose at me. 8. ... I even heard it suggested that he might get the Foreign Office. 9. But a week later, feeling himself betrayed, hysterical and in terror, Norberd betrayed his wife. 10. As he ate the cottage pie that was his portion he felt Blodwen's eye fastened on him ... . 11. We'll have supper sent up to the suite. 12. About ten minutes later he heard the front door shut. 13. Perhaps she refused to have him sent for because she knew he would refuse to come.

**Ex. 15. Say that you want it done.**

Model: to mend my shoes – I'd like my shoes **mended**.

*Prompts:* to repair my watch, to alter my coat, to fix my TV set, to paper the walls, to whitewash the ceiling, to bind the books, to repair my typewriter, to make my prescription, to repair my vacuum-cleaner, to clean my coat, to clean my carpet, to paint the house, to take our photograph, to finish the work by Wednesday.

**Ex. 16. Make short dialogues by analogy.**

- Do you want me to wave your hair?
- Yes, I'd like my hair waved. (No, I don't think so, thanks).

*Prompts:* to cut my hair, to wash my hair, to shampoo my hair, to dye my hair, to spray my hair with lacquer, to paint my eyelashes, to paint my brows, to massage my hands.

**Ex. 17. Advise your friend to do it.**

Model: to test your eyes → You should have your eyes tested.

*Prompts:* to X-ray your chest, to X-ray your leg, to pull out that tooth, to fill that tooth, to test your ears, to wash out your stomach, to bandage your hand, to remove your appendix, to test your blood pressure.

**Ex. 18. Ask your friend when it took place.**

Model: When did John have his appendix removed? → He had his appendix **removed** three days ago.

*Prompts:* to have their photograph taken (yesterday), to have their house painted (last year), to have her bag stolen (two days ago), to have all our windows broken by hooligans (last week). To have his leg amputated (in 1978), to have the house broken into by the thieves (the day before yesterday), to have her medicine prepared (an hour ago), to have my eyes

tested (two months ago), to have a street named after him (in 1987), to have the matter seen to (yesterday), to have his car repaired (a fortnight ago), to have your blood pressure tested (two hours ago).

**Ex. 19. Ask your neighbour if he has ever heard it.**

Model: Have you ever heard a pop song in Portuguese? ! Yes, I have heard some pop song **sung** in Portuguese. (No, I have never heard a pop song **sung** in Portuguese).

*Prompts:* Japanese, Chinese, Vietnamese, Spanish, English, French, Italian, Greek, Hungarian, Polish, Bulgarian.

**Ex. 20. Make up sentences using the following constructions with Participle II.**

1. kept her eyes fastened upon; 2. have the report typed; 3. heard it suggested; 4. found him absorbed in; 5. kept the eyes fixed on; 6. get his voice recorded; 7. heard her name mentioned; 8. had the article printed; 9. with his eyes lowered; 10. heard the key turned; 11. had her hair cut very short; 12. had the letter sent; 13. consider herself offended.

**Ex. 21. State the forms and functions of the absolute participle constructions and translate the sentences into Latvian.**

1. Weather permitting, we shall sail off tomorrow morning. 2. The outside temperature being ten degrees below zero, it was unusually cold in the schoolroom. 3. The mission carried out, they were granted a three day leave. 4. The matter being so urgent, they had to reconsider the original plan. 5. Time dragged on, each day dull and cheerless. 6. Flo kept on smiling, good temper being her special charm. 7. I have something to be thankful for, all things considered. 8. Then they heard him shoot, the shot smashing an echo back. 9. For the moment the shop was empty, the mechanic having disappeared into a room at the back. 10. The pupils having previously acquired all sorts of wrong language habits, the teacher's chief duty is to eliminate these and replace them by sound habits. 11. Plants grown in the dark are always colourless, chlorophyll becoming green only under the action of light. 12. The research group could not go on with the experiments without their plan being approved by the scientific supervisor. 13. The main feature of the nation's economy is the consolidation of capital at an unprecedented level, with profits going up, wages going down and inflation accelerating. 14. The attendance of Western European countries was regrettably small, about half of the overseas visitors being from North America. 15. The Strand, it being the hour when the theatres began to empty themselves, was a roaring torrent of humanity and vehicles ... . 16.



She looked at me, her eyes widening. 17. Liza and Tom and the Blakestones had got a seat together, Liza being between the two men. 18. ... the complication, which the doctor had feared having ensued, recovery was impossible. 19. 'You're worse than Claire', said Ray, her eyes ceasing to glitter. 20. He glared at Tom with outrage, his eyes glittering ... with excitement. 21. She had put some order into the drawing room by now, her housewifely instincts having got better of her dismay. 22. She said it in a low voice, a spasm of pain crossing her face. 23. And in the evening after the high tea, which was their last meal, they sat in the stiff parlour, the ladies working and Dr. Macphail smoking his pipe, the missionary told them of his work in the island. 24. Then his face lightening, he ran to the desk. 25. Dinner began in silence: the women facing one another and the man. 26. 'It's a rum business', said Sergeant Pollock, his eyes wandering to the littered floor. 27. Sitting like that, his eyes half-closed, tasting blood, an image began to form hazily in his mind ... . 28. Supper finished, he led him into the parlour ... . 29. In the house, the lamp lighted, Saxon looked at the coin. 30. And there I lay for a blasted hour, everybody hitting the lower path.

**Ex. 22. Point out the absolute construction and state what kind of adverbial modifier they express.**

1. Mrs. Maylie being fatigued, they returned more slowly home. 2. Then she [Becky] sprang and ran around the desks and benches, with Tom after her, and took refuge in a corner at last, with her little white apron to her face. 3. In the afternoon, with the wind from the south, the big canoes ... had come drifting across the waters. 4. The concert over, the lottery ... came next. 5. Dinner being over, Bathsheba, for want of a better companion, had asked Liddy to come and sit with her. 6. Now he sat down in an armchair opposite Charlie, sat bolt upright, with his hands on his knees, and looked hard at Charlie. 7. Abraham too looked well, his cheeks filled out, his eyes cheerful. 8. Then, with her heart beating fast, she went up and rang the bell. 9. She sat on the steps, with her bare arms crossed upon her knees. 10. Mr. Pickwick's mouth and chin having been hastily enveloped in a large shawl, his hat having been put on his head and his great coat thrown over his arm, he replied in the affirmative. 11. With the watch in her hand she lifted her head and looked directly at him, her eyes calm and empty as two holes. 12. He stood shamefully hesitating, the strength of his resolution exhausted in his words. 13. With Lowell closely watching, he slowly removed a paper and spread it carefully on his desk. 14. The door of the opposite parlour being then opened, I heard some voices. 15. Catherine looked at me all the time, her eyes happy. 16. I admired her, with love dead as a stone. 17. They lived the life of normal suburban children, school and holidays passing in a gentle rhythm. 18. The first bustle of installation over, time hung heavy on his

hands. 19. The child lay on the bed, its eyes shut, flushed and sweating, breathing in short, whistling gasps. 20. Now this Miss Barbary was extremely close ... for a female; females being generally rather given to conversation.

**Ex. 23. Recast the following sentences so as to use the nominative absolute participial construction.**

1. When a fortnight of his notice to Mrs. Grant had expired Mike really began to worry. 2. The rain showed no sign of stopping, and at length with umbrellas and waterproofs they set out. 3. When the door bell rang, Lesley rose and left the room. 4. At last his preparations were complete – the flowers, the food, the wine upon the ice; his eyes surveyed the scene with shining intensity. 5. Now that the examination was so close at hand, a queer calmness had settled upon him. 6. His brain was inactive, almost dull. He felt that he knew nothing. 7. Now that the moment had come he found it difficult to speak. 8. After tea when all the lamps were lit, work went more briskly. 9. After Oscar had gone, Liza stood for a moment in the hall. 10. After it was settled that Joy should come down to Blackstable, Mrs. Grey had thought much how she should treat him. 11. When it was finished assuming my best company manners, I turned to Mrs. Driffield. 12. When Julia and Simmy had decided to try their luck in London, Jimmie Field had written to her asking her to do what she could for them. 13. When the massage was finished Evie brought Julia a cup of tea. 14. After she had gone he got to thinking the matter over. 15. As the front door was open, she could see straight through the house. 16. Rip had no desire to work on his farm, for it was to his mind the worst piece of land in the neighbourhood. 17. They stood there; the night wind was shaking the drying whispering leaves. 18. The mines in Blaenelly were dusty and unhealthy, and many miners were suffering from consumption. 19. As the situation was urgent, we had to go ahead. 20. When the greetings were over, Old Jolyon seated himself in a wicker chair. 21. The town of Crewe is known to be one of the most busy junctions in England; many railway lines pass through it. 22. We set off; the rain was still coming down heavily. 23. After a private sitting-room had been engaged, bedrooms inspected and dinner ordered, the party walked out to view the city. 24. Dinner was served on the terrace, as it was very close in the room. 25. Thoughtful, almost subdued, Andrew finished his omelette, his eyes were all the time fixed upon the microscope. 26. There was in fact nothing to wait for, and we got down to work. 27. The question was rather difficult to answer at once, and I asked for permission to think it over. 28. He stood leaning against the wall, his arms were folded. 29. There was very little time left; we had to hurry. 30. Although the twins were very much alike, their parents seemed to have no difficulty in distinguishing them. 31. Of an evening he read aloud, his small son sat by his

side. 32. The stranger entered the room, a man who hardly had a hair on his head, he held his hat in his hand and an affable smile played on his lips. 33. The new engines were safely delivered, all of them were in good order. 34. Our efforts to start the car had failed, we spent the night at a nearby village.

**Ex. 24. Make up sentences, using the following phrases as nominative absolute constructions.**

there being no time to lose; the concert over; it being late; hands in pockets; his collar unbuttoned; with his eyes wide open; such being the case; his tone full of admiration; our car being damaged; banners flying; people singing and dancing; with all the windows lit; a cup of tea before him untouched; her gaze fixed on the pianist's hands; the weather being fine; it being a cold day; the night being fine; his voice trembling; the working day being over; his eyes widening; his cheeks reddening; her face lightening; my friend having declared; his hand reaching for a cigarette; the hour being early; the child weeping bitterly; her eyes sparkling with indignation; the door bell ringing; this finished.

## Revision Exercises

**Ex. 1. State the form and function of the participle.**

1. I do not know how long we stood there, eating potatoes in the snow, warming our hands by the open fire, talking and laughing ... 2. ... his intonation was so unmistakably American that Sam glanced at him as he passed; and, glancing half stopped, arrested by something strangely familiar about the man's face. 3. Kay stalked across the hall, and, having turned the handle, found confronting her a young woman of spectacular appearance ... 4. She closed the door and came into the room, taking off her coat. 5. For a moment Kay stared speechlessly; then, throwing her head back, she gave out a short, sharp scream of laughter ... 6. With a crack of his fingers he had a waiter running for them. 7. In the seat immediately behind mine, leaning forward with her lips slightly parted was ... Lady Edwards, better known as Jane Wilkinson. 8. The young gentleman looked at the stream discoloured by the melting snow. 9. ... he paid his debts, sought help from no one and, never having done a stroke of work in his life, looked for a means of livelihood. 10. After this they strolled back to the broke, and found things being prepared for luncheon. 11. Day by day the news of me crept farther and farther into the inner pages of the newspaper, being pushed back by newer and more sensational copy. 12. ... when Ashenden, having just stepped out of his bath, was trying to dry himself on a towel that absorbed no moisture, his door was quickly opened and a man slipped into his room.

**Ex. 2. Replace the infinitives in brackets by the appropriate form of the participle.**

1. She stayed (to lock) in her room, (to refuse) to come downstairs. 2. He had a good practical knowledge of the language, (to work) as an interpreter for many years. 3. The boys on the fence looked like swallows (to perch) on a telegraph wire. 4. They went out as they had come, (to see) and (to see) by no one on their way. 5. 'I like it here', she said, (to seat) herself at the table nearest to the window. 6. Except for the grand piano and the pianist (to seat) unobtrusively before it, the stage was empty. 7. He looked so beautiful and peaceful, (to sit) in that chair under the tree. 8. He looked at the scene (to shake) to the depth of his heart. 9. The boy came out of the water, all blue and (to shake) from head to foot. 10. (To plunge) head-long into that enterprise, he was now desperately looking for a way out of it. 11. (To plunge) in thought, he did not seem to notice what was going on around him. 12. (To arrive) at the airport where he was to change, he had to wait for three hours for the connection. 13. (To arrive) in the town about twenty years before, he had succeeded thereafter beyond his wildest expectations. 14. He introduced me to a friend of his, recently (to arrive) after a cruise around Europe. 15. (To support) by her elbow, Mary listened to their talk. 16. (To support) her by his arm, he helped her out of the carriage. 17. The girl was fascinated by the dark surface of the water (to reflect) the cold lanterns of stars. 18. The young foliage of the trees, (to reflect) in the river, looked like shimmering lace. 19. I saw the figure of an old woman (to come) towards me. 20. He was like an invalid newly (to come) after a long illness. 21. My brother is a soldier just (to come) back home on leave. 22. He retired (to leave) the laboratory in the hands of a talented successor. 23. He retired (to turn) the laboratory into a big research centre. 24. (To finish) with their meal, they went for a stroll in the park. 25. (To finish) their meal, they went for a stroll in the park. 26. (To return) home and (to see) his parents worried he asked what the matter was. 27. (To dine) and (to puff) leisurely at their cigars, the men were engaged in a desultory conversation. 28. (To look) through the paper and (to okey) it, he gave it to the secretary to be typed. 29. (To beat), (to despair), (to labour) in vain for half an hour, he still persisted in one last effort, (to try) to get breath into the limp body of the drowned man. 30. He recoiled as if (to expect) a blow. 31. The room had a musty smell as though (not to live) in for quite a time. 32. My father hates being disturbed when (to engage) in some kind of work. 33. He always keeps a diary while (to travel).

**Ex. 3. Specify the functions of the participle by inserting in the blanks appropriate conjunctions.**

1. I stood nursing the wrist I had sprained ... skating. 2. She kept inclining her head ... listening for something. 3. He did not look his best ... smiling.

4. And then suddenly ... smoking a placid after-lunch pipe, his mood changed. 5. He cast a swift glance over his shoulder ... debating the practicability of a dive into the traffic. 6. 'Good evening!' she said, suddenly and sharply, and Bill Bannister shot up from the sofa ... propelled by an explosive. 7. He is safe ... living in the country. But he keeps dashing away from the country and losing his head. 8. ... saying these words he got up. 9. The house ... finished was fresh and gay. 10. Next day, ... waiting before that picture he looked at it with wonder. 11. I saw him for the first time ... lunching here yesterday. 12. ... waiting for that answer, it had become Mr. Pendyce's habit to promenade between these beds. 13. ... passing the bookshop I stopped to look in the window and had noticed among other new books the translation of a novel of mine. 14. I had longingly scanned the exterior of the department ... sitting the Marshall with Gavin. 15. It was a pretty mouth but Sam who had made a study of the picture, was of the opinion that it would look even prettier ... smiling.

**Ex. 4. Paraphrase the following, using participles where possible.**

1. He went over to the window; he stood there and listened to the hum of voices, which was coming from the outside. 2. He was deafened by the noise and did not at once notice when it stopped. 3. I couldn't ring him up as I did not know his telephone number. 4. After I had tried various topics of conversation I asked her, for want of anything better to say, to tell me who all the people at table were. 5. When it was put to vote, the resolution was carried unanimously. 6. Several items of the plan that was agreed upon require certain changes. 7. 'These are pretty', she exclaimed as she picked up a bouquet of violets and pinned them on. 8. She lay awake all night and thought of what had happened. 9. He may forget it unless he is reminded. 10. From a notion, which he once took into his head, he parted very slowly. 11. The light which was streaming from the half open door dazzled him. 12. We went to see our friends who had just returned from a far voyage. 13. He plunged into the great heap of letters which had long been waiting for him. 14. He hailed a cab and told the man to drive to Park Lane. 15. He was not happy. The thought worried him. 16. The front page carries a picture of the first liner which is being launched from the new shipyard. 17. The lorries drove closer to the ship which was being unloaded. 18. The boy tried to put together the piece of a gramophone record that had broken. 19. And now that he had made up his mind and was prepared to meet any contingency, he regained his composure. 20. Mr. Smith returned to the inn, went up to his room and ordered lunch to be brought up. 21. From the kitchen came a pleasant smell, some appetizing food was being cooked there. 22. He had a massive gold watch, which had belonged to his father. 23. The sidewalks were crowded with people who came to watch the demonstration.

## Test Yourself

Choose the correct form of Participle I or Participle II.

1. Water lilies are usually found ... in still waters.
  - a) having grown
  - b) being grown
  - c) growing
2. He listened to the waves ... on the sand.
  - a) rolling
  - b) rolled
  - c) having rolled
3. She walked out of the house, ... so loudly and hysterically now that people stopped in the street to look at her.
  - a) being laughed
  - b) laughing
  - c) having laughed
4. Would you like your hair ... .
  - a) washing
  - b) being washed
  - c) washed
5. He was very angry when his car broke down, ... only a week before.
  - a) serviced
  - b) being serviced
  - c) having had it serviced
6. While ... the foundation of the house, the workmen unearthed a horde of Roman coins.
  - a) digging
  - b) having dug
  - c) being dug
7. I have heard a pop song ... in Portuguese.
  - a) being sung
  - b) sung
  - c) having been sung
8. Philip felt his heart ... with love for this family.
  - a) beaten
  - b) beating
  - c) being beaten
9. Can you smell something ... ?
  - a) burnt
  - b) being burnt
  - c) burning

10. I won't have you ... this.  
a) done  
b) having done  
c) doing
11. ... in that country all his life, he knew it very well.  
a) living  
b) having lived  
c) lived
12. ..., the enemy was obliged to retreat.  
a) defeated  
b) having been defeated  
c) defeating
13. ... by the doctor to go to the south, she decided to spend her holiday in Spain.  
a) having been advised  
b) advised  
c) being advised
14. The leaves ... on the ground reminded us of autumn.  
a) lain  
b) lying  
c) having lain
15. Books ... in childhood seem like old friends.  
a) reading  
b) having been read  
c) read
16. ... the information required, the sellers sent their offer.  
a) having received  
b) received  
c) receiving
17. I'll show you the article ... by my brother.  
a) writing  
b) written  
c) being written
18. There are many wonderful books ... human deeds.  
a) having described  
b) described  
c) describing
19. She showed the travellers into the room ... for them.  
a) having been reserved  
b) reserved  
c) being reserved

20. We saw a man ... in the garden with a dog.

- a) walked
- b) having walked
- c) walking

**Key:**

1. c; 2. a; 3. b; 4. c; 5. c; 6. a; 7. b; 8. b; 9. c; 10. c; 11. a; 12. b; 13. a; 14. b; 15. c; 16. a; 17. b; 18. c; 19. b; 20. c.

## Translation Exercises

### Ex. 1. Translate into English.

1. Apspriešamais jautājums mūs visus interesē. 2. Problēmām, kas tika apspriestas konferencē, ir milzīga nozīme. 3. Korespondents klausījās, kā konferences dalībnieki apsprieda svarīgu jautājumu. 4. Es vēlos, lai šis jautājums apspriestu rītdienas sapulcē. 5. Konferences dalībnieki apsprieda referātu, un korespondents laiku pa laikam kaut ko atzīmēja savā bloknotā. 6. Pēc referāta apspriešanas priekšsēdētājs paziņoja pārtraukumu. 7. Vai kāds redzēja, kā viņi iekāpa lidmašīnā? 8. Vai tiešām jūs nedzirdējāt, ka to paziņoja? 9. Es dzirdēju, ka viņa vārdu minēja sarunā. 10. Es paaugstinājos, kur viņam bija uzvalks. 11. Un tā mēs varam uzskatīt šo problēmu par atrisinātu. 12. Mēs sēdējām liedagā, vērojot, kā saule paceļas virs jūras. 13. Ceļojot, mēs uz zinām daudz jauna un interesanta. 14. Ieraudzījis policistu, viņš pārgāja ielas pretējā pusē. 15. Pabeiguši eksperimentus, viņi apsprieda rezultātus. 16. Nodzīvojis ilgi ārzemēs, viņš bija priecīgs atgriezties mājās. 17. Roberts saņēma telegrammu, kas paziņoja par māsu ierašanos. 18. Vēstule, kas bija adresēta redaktoram, palika bez atbildes. 19. Dramaturgs, kurš uzrakstījis šo lugu, ir vēl glūbi jauns. 20. Zinātnieks, kurš izdarīja šo atklājumu, apbalvots ar Nobela prēmiju.

### Ex. 2. Translate into English, using Participle I.

1. Grāmatas, kas atrodas uz galda, pieder manam brālim. 2. Mašīna, kas sekoja mums, bija pelēka. 3. Zēnu, kurš izsita logu, sauc Toms. 4. Tas bija pats aizraujošākais notikums manā dzīvē. 5. Kokus, kas aug mūsu mājas priekšā, iestādīja mans tēvs. 6. Studenti, kuri bija mūs gaidījuši, nupat aizgāja. 7. Viņš gāja līnām, paliekam apstādamies un pajautājot kaut ko garāmgājējiem. 8. Viņa stāvēja, domādama, ko lai atbild. 9. Viņš paskatījās uz durvīm, gaidīdams, ka tās atvēršies un pa tām iznāks māte. 10. Viņš stāvēja, mēģinādams izdomāt, ko lai saka. 11. Viņa aizvēra acis, mēģinādama atcerēties, kur viņa bija redzējusi šo meiteni. 12. Viņi pastaigājās pa dārzu, tiksmīnādami par skaistajiem ziediem. 13. Pārskatot vecos laikrakstus, viņš uzdūrās interesantam



rakstam par Anglijas jaunatnes organizācijām. 14. Nezinādama, ko atbildēt, viņa nosarka. 15. Izlasījis grāmatu, viņš to nodeva atpakaļ bibliotēkai. 16. Pārņākusi mājas, viņa atrada telegrammu. 17. Noklausījušies viņa paskaidrojumu, mēs nolēmām, ka viņiem ir taisnība. 18. Nodzīvojis šai pilsētā 20 gadus, viņš te pazina katru ielu. 19. Atvadījies no draugiem, viņš devās uz staciju. 20. Viņi nevarēja iekļūt mājā, jo bija pazaudējuši atslēgas.

**Ex. 3. Translate into English, using Participle II.**

1. Lietas, kas atstātas bagāžas glabātuvē, var saņemt jebkurā laikā. 2. Problēma, kuru viņš skāra savā runā, pelna nopietnu ievērojību. 3. Viņa tēvs bija atvaļināts pulkvedis. 4. Viņa atnāca sava brālēņa pavadībā. 5. Nolīgumu, ko parakstīja decembrī, ratificējušas abas puses. 6. Nosauciet vārdus, kas aizgūti no franču valodas. 7. Raksts par apkārtējās vides aizsardzību, kas publicēts vakardienas laikrakstā, izraisījis milzīgu interesi. 8. Valoda, kurā runā ASV, tiek saukta par angļu valodas amerikānisko variantu. 9. Kad viņai piedāvāja palīdzību, viņa pateicās par to, bet atteicās no jebkuras palīdzības. 10. Kad viņam apjautājās par braucienu, viņš teica, ka tas bijis ļoti nogurdinošs. 11. Ja viņam tiks dota iespēja, viņš kļūs par ļoti labu mākslinieku. 12. Lai gan mācību grāmata domāta iesācējiem, to var arī izmantot jau vairāk sagatavotu studentu apmācībai. 13. Kad viņam atgādināja par parādu, viņš to apsolījās atmaksāt pēc divām dienām. 14. Lai gan visi viņu cienīja, viņš jutās svešs starp tiem. 15. Ja viņu uzlielīs, viņš centīsies strādāt vēl labāk. 16. Uzvalks viņam derēja tā, it kā būtu ņūts viņam. 17. Vēstule bija grūti lasāma, it kā būtu bijusi rakstīta steigā. 18. Kad viņam ieteica pieņemt ielūgumu, viņš piekrita.

**Ex. 4. Translate into English. Use the Objective Participial Construction.**

1. Viņa dzirdēja, ka tēvs staigāja blakus istabā. 2. Toms redzēja, ka ūdeni kaut kas ātri kustējās. 3. Viņš ievēroja, ka kāds viņam seko, un nolēma mainīt savu ceļu. 4. Aizgājis līdz vidum, es jutu, ka tilts ūpojas. 5. Izgājis dārzā, es redzēju, ka bērni mierīgi rotāļas, it kā nekas nebūtu noticis. 6. Es vēroju, cik uzmanīgi viņš lasīja vēstuli. 7. Istabas durvis bija atvērtas, un es varēju redzēt, kā divas jaunas sievietes par kaut ko dzīvi sarunājās pie tējas tases. 8. Viņš dzirdēja, kā viņa miegā vairākkārt nopūšas. 9. Vai jūs kādreiz esat dzirdējis viņu spēcīgam šo gabalu? 10. Es sajutu, kā spēki pamazām atgriežas. 11. Bija klusa vasaras nakts. Mēs sēdējām dārzā un vērojām, kā aiz kokiem līdnam paceļas mākonis. 12. Es pārtaisīju savu ziemas mēteļi. 13. Kad jūs beidzot noskaņosiet savas klavieres? 14. Es nesalaboju pulksteni vakar, jo visas darbnīcas jau bija slēgtas. 15. Kad jūs izlīmējāt tapetēm savu istabu? 16. Vai griestus jums jau nobalsināja? 17. Jums šī grāmata jāiesien. 18. Kur jums salabojas velosipēdu? 19. Kur tu fotografējies? 20. Kur tu ūvi šo kleitu?

**Ex. 5. Translate into English using the Subjective Participial Construction.**

1. Bija dzirdams, ka viòð àtri piecçlàs un izgàja no istabas. 2. Varçja redzçt, ka pa ielu ðurp skrçja cilvçki. 3. Redzçja, ka jûs pirkât grâmatas. 4. Bija dzirdams, kâ viòi strîdçjàs. 5. Dzirdçja, ka viòð sarunâjas ar savu tçvoci.

**Ex. 6. Translate into English, using the Nominative Absolute Construction.**

1. Misis Peidþa bija ïoti sîkumaina un alkatîga sieviete, un Endrjû nicinâja viòu. 2. Nîks un Elvîra bija ïoti nepraktiski cilvçki. Viòus maz interesçja bçrnu nâkotne. 3. Kad vçstule bija uzrakstîta, Dþeina piedâvâjàs aiznest to uz pastu. 4. Sasârtuði no sala, mirdzoðâm acîm, bçrni atgriezàs no slçpoðanas. 5. Istabâ ieskrçja ççns, atpogâtu mçteli un pakausî atstumtu cepuri. 6. Lîdz vilciena atieðanai vçl bija palikusi pusstunda, un mçs izlçmâm paçst vakariòas stacijas restorânâ. 7. Tâ kâ ðeit pasâpîeru vilciens nepietur, mums nâksies izkâpt nâkoðajâ stacijâ. 8. Saule norietçja. Sâka àtri tumst. 9. Ja laiks bûs labs, sportisti varçs sasniegt augstus rezultâtus. 10. Mçs runâjam ilgi: viòð uzdeva man jautâjumus, es labprât atbildçju uz tiem. 11. Mçs izmirkâm cauri, bet lietus lija un lija. 12. Bija ïoti mitrs, un mçs ar grûtibâm atradâm sausu vietu, kur uzcelt telti. 13. Ja apstâkii atiaus, es atbraukðu pie jums vasarâ. 14. Visu norunâjuði, mçs atvadîjamies un izklîdâm lîdz nâkamajai dienai.

**Ex. 7. Translate into English.**

1. Izgâjusi uz skatuves, Kerija nevarçja pârvarçt bailes, kas pâròçma viòu. 2. Izlasîjusi Içdijas Èilternas vçstuli, misis Èivli nolçma to izmantot savâ labâ. 3. Sajutis, ka Kerija uztraucas, Druç devâs aiz kulisçm, lai uzmundrinâtu viòu. 4. Balstîdamies uz Dþeinas roku, misters Roèesters, klibodams, devâs pie zirga. 5. Pârî çrbies èigânieties tçrpâ, misters Roèesters gribçja izjokot savus viesus. 6. Pçç tam, kad Klaida lietas liecinieki bija nopratinâti, viòiem atiâva atstât tiesas zâlî. 7. Kad Klaidu pratinâja, viòð centâs izlikties mierîgs, bet tas viòam padevâs slikti. 8. Kad misis Èivli pajautâja seram Robertam, vai viòð domâ atsaukt savu referâtu, viòð atbildçja noliedzòði. 9. Cilvçks, kurð atnesa Dþemmai Artura vçstuli, vçlçjàs ar viòu parunât vienatnç. 10. Svçtceinieks, kurð bija atnâcis pie Içdijas Rovenas, lai tai nodotu sveicienu no Aivenho, palûdza, lai viòu aizved pie Içdijas. 11. Misis Broudijai bija ïoti vâjð raksturs, un viòa klusçdama pacieta visus vîra apvainojumus. 12. Piespraude, kas bija nozagta lorda Goringa mâsîcai, atradâs pie misis Èivli. 13. Uzmetis skatienu zîmîtei, kas gulçja uz galda, Kîts uzreiz pazina brâia rokkrakstu. 14. Kad Klaidis atnâca pie mistera Meisona, viòð saprata, ka ðis cilvçks viòu nesaudzçs. 15. Pâslçpusies aiz mâjas, Nellija sâka vçrot Robertu. 16. Aizvadîjis tçvu lîdz karietei, Dþolions atgriezàs mâjâ. 17. Viòa aizgàja uz savu istabu, palûgusi, lai

viou netraucç. 18. Tūristi, ne reizi vien dzirdçjuði par ðim vietām, izteica vç-  
lçðanos turp aizbraukt. 19. Lidotājs, kas izkāpa no lidmaðinas, izskatījās ioti  
noguris. 20. Ugunsdzçsçjs ātri uzrāpās pa kāpnçm, nozuzdams pa vienu  
degoðā nama logu. 21. Vingrotājs izpildīja visus vingrojumus ar tādu vieglu-  
mu, kurð iegūstams tikai pastāvīgi trençjoties. 22. Viði aplusa, izsmçluði  
visas iespçjamās sarunu tçmas. 23. Suns pieskrçja pie manis un sāka luncināt  
astī, it kā sasveicinādamies ar mani. 24. Ðo ūdeni nedrīkst dzert, iekams to  
neizfiltrçs. 25. Ja ðo romānu ekranizçs, tam neapðaubāmi būs lieli panākumi.  
26. Beidzot pienāca diena, kuru ar tādu nepacietību gaidīja. 27. Viða vecāki,  
pieraduði pie tādām lietām, uzòçma mani sirsnīgi, nemaz nebrīnīdamies, ka  
viou dçls atvedis līdz gluþi sveðu cilvçku. 28. Zçnu, kurð bija pazaudçjis ve-  
cākus, ievietoja bāreðu namā.

---

## THE GERUND

---

**Ex. 1. State the form of the gerund. Translate the sentences into Latvian.**

1. You have to decide what to do. You can't postpone making that decision any longer. 2. I have the impression of having passed some test. 3. I did for a moment examine the possibility of Roger not having been very good at his job and inventing the story as an excuse for having been sacked but I kept my mouth shut. 4. He didn't even acknowledge having received the invitation. 5. The secretary asked if I would mind waiting for a few minutes. 6. Elizabeth did not like being called Betsy. 7. The teacher said that he wouldn't tolerate my arriving late every day. 8. She denies having seen them in the shop. 9. It is better to die as the result of being worn out with activity than as the result of doing nothing. 10. Visiting is nicer than being visited. 11. I appreciated being invited to your home. 12. He appreciates having had the opportunity to meet your parents.

**Ex. 2. Use the gerund of the verb in brackets:**

**A. in the active or passive voice (non-perfect form).**

1. Why do you avoid (to see) me? 2. He tried to avoid (to see). 3. We insist on (to send) him there at once. 4. He insists on (to send) there instead of me. 5. Do you mind (to examine) the first? 6. He showed no sign of (to know) them. 7. She showed no sign of (to impress). 8. He had the most irritating habit of (to joke) at the wrong moment. 9. I was annoyed at (to

interrupt) every other moment. 10. He hated (to remind) people of their duties or (to remind) of his. 11. On (to introduce) they easily fell to (to talk). 12. In (to discuss) the problem they touched upon some very interesting items. 13. The equipment must go through a number of tests before (to install). 14. The operator can set the machine in motion by (to push) the button or (to press) the pedal. 15. The water requires (to filter). 16. The matter is not worth (to speak of).

**B. use any appropriate form of the gerund.**

1. Excuse me for (to give) you so much trouble. 2. You never mentioned (to speak) to them on the subject. 3. He was proud of (to award) the prize. 4. I don't remember ever (to see) you. 5. I don't remember (to ask) this question. 6. The boys were punished for (to break) the window. 7. The boy was afraid of (to punish) and hid himself. 8. He was quite serious in (to say) that he was leaving the place for good. 9. She seemed sorry for (to be) rude to me. 10. He confessed to (to forget) that he was to come on Friday. 11. The old man could not stand (to make) fun of. 12. Letters were no use: he had no talent for (to express) himself on paper. 13. After thoroughly (to examine) by the doctor, the young man was admitted to the sports club. 14. Soon she could not help (to attract) by the fact that she was being looked at. 15. The camera wanted (to adjust). 16. They accused me of (to mislead) them. 17. She was so eagerly looking forward to (to give) the leading part to play that she was greatly disappointed at not even (to offer) it. 18. She reproached me for not (to keep) my promise. 19. We found him busy (to look) through the morning mail. 20. After (to look) through and (to sort) out, the letters were registered and filed. 21. He liked to do things without (to disturb) anyone or (to disturb).

**Ex. 3. Insert the appropriate form of the gerund.**

1. Stark sat down without ... (to speak). 2. He did not go without ... by Amy (to congratulate). 3. After ... more closely than usual and ... his hair, he ... took the bus uptown (to shave, to brush). 4. At South Square, on ... that Michael and Fleur were out, he did not dress for dinner, but went to the nursery (to discover). 5. I had to sound as if I didn't mind ... , as though I had no temper of my own (to insult). 6. She kept on ... , her voice low and controlled (to talk). 7. In the morning light, she was ashamed of herself for ... so ... the night before (to elate). 8. The house wanted ... (to do up). 9. Even a criminal must be told the nature of his crime before ... (to convict). 10. She showed none of the usual feminine pleasure at ... hard to understand, inscrutable, mysterious (to be). 11. I still reproached myself for not ... open with Douglas Osbaldiston from the start, when he had invited me to do so (to be). 12. No woman looks her best after ... up all night (to sit). 13. His legs were somewhat stiff from not ... or ... for days (to hike, to

climb). 14. I'm tired of ... like a silly fat lamb (to treat). 15. I know everyone who's worth ... (to know). 16. After ... this, he cursed himself for not ... the opposite, so that he might have used the expected guest as a lever to get rid of Misha (to say, to say). 17. There is vivid happiness in merely ... alive (to be). 18. 'Your tie needs ...', Mrs. Simpson said (to straighten). 19. The attempt is at least worth ... (to make). 20. Mr. Creakle then caned Tommy Traddles for ... in tears, instead of cheers, on account of Mr. Mell's departure ... (to discover). 21. He apologized to Hooker for ... so late (to be down). 22. One could not walk or drive about Philadelphia without ... and ... with the general tendency toward a more cultivated and selective social life (to see, to impress). 23. I just couldn't stand ... away from you any longer (to be). 24. I remember ... him with her and Marner going away from church (to see). 25. When I told him that I meant to live in Paris for a while, and had taken an apartment, he reproached me bitterly for not ... him know (to let). 26. He had a flat smooth face with heavy-lidded green eyes that gave the impression of ... at a slant (to set). 27. His latest craze was to discover her age, which he cursed himself for not ... when he had her passport in his hands (to observe). 28. Let me tell you whose house you've come into without ... or ... (to ask, to want). 29. I'm tired of ... to you (to talk). 30. They soon discovered that the gate was securely locked. They looked at one another in a mixed fashion, a trifle disappointed at ... , but still triumphant at ... the place (to hold up, to find).

**Ex. 4. State the functions of the gerund.**

1. I'm sure that we choose our own destinies; but I can't help feeling that once one's chosen a certain track there's remarkably little opportunity of changing. 2. She kept on crying, burying her face in my chest. 3. I had no hope now of marrying her; but I saw no point in letting her go. 4. She was my selection at random with no hope of winning. 5. Flying's fun, but being shot at is most disconcerting. 6. They gave me the sensation of being in the known, of being close to a wicked, exciting, above all, wealthy world. 7. I'm sorry for keeping you waiting. 8. He looked utterly incapable of making a fool of himself. 9. I remember noticing with approval that she took the courtesy for granted. 10. Saying the wrong thing to the waiter or picking up the wrong fork or not being able to find the cloakroom immediately wouldn't have mattered in an ordinary café. 11. He would not demean himself by marrying a mill-hand or shop-girl; why should miss Brown demean herself by marrying a minor municipal official? 12. We'd had the window open all the way but it only had the effect of stirring the air like porridge without bringing any fresh oxygen in. 13. Driving a car isn't as comfortable as travelling by train. 14. Then he mentioned having been in hospital last year. 15. Reading books enlarges one's horizons.

**Ex. 5. Make sentences by using the gerund as subject after *it's no use (good), it's a waste of time.***

Model A: to ring him up now → It's no use (good) **ringing** him up now. He is not at home yet.

Model B: to persuade her to join us → It's a waste of time **persuading** her to join us. She's busy.

*Prompts:* to argue with him, to try to get to the truth, to talk about it now, to complain to him of his son's rudeness, to remind him to answer that letter, to make a fuss, to warn him of the danger, to say that you are not satisfied, to tell him that he is wrong, to hope for help from the authorities, to complain to them, to cry over spilt milk, to lose your temper, to threaten him.

**Ex. 6. Make sentences with the same meaning by using a gerund phrase as the subject.**

Model: It is fun to play tennis. → Playing tennis is fun.

1. It is important to have friends. 2. It's easy to learn how to cook. 3. It is dangerous to walk alone at night in that part of the city. 4. Is it difficult to learn a second foreign language? 5. It is important to be polite to other people. 6. It is interesting to learn about other cultures. 7. It is important to eat nutritious food.

**Ex. 7. Read the sentences. Write down the verbs and prepositions, after which the gerund is used as an object.**

1. Thank you for helping me carry the packets to the post-office. 2. Alison is not interested in looking for a new job. 3. I am accustomed to having a big breakfast every morning. 4. The rain prevented us from completing the work. 5. Fred is always complaining about (of) having a headache. 6. I'm looking forward to seeing my family again. 7. Everyone in the neighbourhood participated in searching for the lost child. 8. I apologized to Bill for making him wait for me. 9. The weather is terrible tonight. I don't blame you for preferring to stay at home (for not wanting to go to the meeting). 10. She insisted on knowing the whole truth. 11. Who is responsible for washing dishes after dinner? 12. Where should we go for dinner tonight? Would you object to going to an Italian restaurant? 13. The thief was accused of stealing a woman's purse. 14. Henry is excited about leaving for India. 15. The angry look on his face stopped me from speaking my mind. 16. They object to changing their plans at this late date. 17. I am used to (accustomed to) sleeping with the window open. 18. Sue is in charge of organizing the meeting. 19. I didn't recall his saying any such thing.

**Ex. 8. Complete the sentences, using gerunds.**

1. I wish you'd do something to help, instead of (to stand there giving advice). 2. The Government was unable to make any promises about (to lift restrictions in the nearest future). 3. There are many difficulties involved in (to follow such a course of action). 4. You must be tired of (to do the same thing day after day). 5. The boy was severely reprimanded for (to bully younger boys). 6. He doesn't take any interest in (to bring up his children). 7. You seem to be fond of (to point out other people's faults). 8. The soldier was court-martialled for (to disobey the orders of a superior officer). 9. People should be asked to refrain from (to smoke in restaurants). 10. Miners are always warned against (to take matches into the mines). 11. Who is responsible for (to lock the building at night)? 12. The answer to the housing problem seems to lie in (to use factory-built units to a far greater extent).

**Ex. 9. Make a polite request.**

Model: to take me to the station → Would you mind **taking** me to the station? – I'm afraid I can't just at the moment. (Unfortunately I haven't time. I'm sorry, but I'm just going out).

*Prompts:* to make sandwiches, to fill the thermoses, to bring the luggage down to the hall, to lock the cases, to pack for the children, to defrost the fridge, to tell the neighbours we are going away, to book the rooms, to buy maps, to work out our route.

**Ex. 10. Persuade your friend not to do it.**

Model: to read in a bad light → I read in a bad light and felt awful afterwards. – Then try to avoid **reading** in a bad light.

*Prompts:* to quarrel with my neighbours, to overeat, to drink coffee before going to bed, to go to bed too late, to carry heavy suitcases, to take sleeping pills, to travel by plane.

**Ex. 11. Say that you suggested doing it.**

Model: to leave at once → Why didn't you leave at once? – Well, I suggested **leaving** at once but my friends wouldn't hear of it.

*Prompts:* to look for a cheaper hotel, to see the manager, to complain to your agency, to hire a taxi, to borrow a tent, to get a job at a factory, to offer to work as guides, to ring me up, to tell your parents, to consult a lawyer, to have another try, to give him a lift.

**Ex. 12. Say that you share your neighbour's opinion.**

Model: to miss the train → I expected he didn't want to miss the train. – Yes, I suppose he was afraid of **missing** the train.

*Prompts:* to be seen there, to spoil his new suit, to shock the neighbours, to attract attention, to catch cold, to upset his parents, to cause a scandal, to press the wrong button, to annoy the teacher, to lose his job, to make things worse, to wake everyone up, to get wet.

**Ex. 13. Fill in the required prepositions wherever necessary.**

1. Will you refrain ... making loose statements about the matter? 2. My friend is very good ... translating things from Latvian into English. 3. I hope you don't object ... out singing. 4. The old man insisted ... getting into the car. 5. Will you see ... the fire, while I see ... getting some water? 6. Of course he wouldn't dream ... being rude to you. 7. How much did they charge ... parking the car? 8. She was frightfully pleased ... being the first to hear the news. 9. Society as a whole is responsible ... bringing up children. 10. I had succeeded ... putting off the lecture. 11. Florence got used ... getting birthday presents from him. 12. He has become ill ... eating too much. 13. ... coming into the room she switched on the light. 14. My programme this morning consists ... writing two letters and attending a lecture. 15. She took ... typing his papers over for him because he was a poor and careless typist.

**Ex. 14. Supply the correct (passive or active) Gerund form of the verb shown in brackets.**

1. This material wants (look through) before being given to the students. 2. Her suggestion requires (discuss) at the meeting. 3. Jane's opinions won't bear (repeat) in public. 4. His brave action certainly deserves (reward). 5. Your friend's idea is worth (go into) more carefully. 6. It is well known that small children need (look after) more than older ones. 7. Your hair wants (cut). 8. The definition needed (tidy up). 9. There is one kind of fiction that will not stand (read). 10. Three points are worth (quote) for our purpose.

**Ex. 15. Say that your friend will have the chance of doing it in summer.**

Model: to swim in the sea → In summer he will have the chance (the possibility) of **swimming** in the sea.

*Prompts:* to visit his parents, to meet his school friends, to travel abroad, to fish in the river, to work at the camp, to have a good holiday, to sunbathe, to redecorate his house, to visit St. Petersburg, to write a book about his experiences.



**Ex. 16. Say that you don't know why he did it.**

Model: to reject the offer → Why did Peter reject the offer? – I can't make out the reason for his **rejecting** the offer.

*Prompts:* to refuse to stay in the hotel, to take the books back, to burn the letter, to refuse to organize the reception, to refuse to make a speech, to change his job, to forge the signature, to give false evidence, to get angry, to go to bed very late, to quarrel with his neighbours, to invite everyone to his country house, to record their conversation, to leave at once, to refuse to join your company.

**Ex. 17. Ask your neighbour if he (she) did it.**

Model: to accompany the delegation → Did you accompany the delegation? – Yes, I had the honour (the pleasure) of **accompanying** the delegation.

*Prompts:* to open the meeting, to introduce the speaker, to make a speech at the meeting, to speak on behalf of the group, to meet the guests, to receive the delegation, to organize the reception, to lead the delegation, to head the delegation, to show the guests round the city, to accompany the guests to the Mound of Glory.

**Ex. 18. Make the dialogue by analogy.**

Model: to act as a guide →  
– Did he refuse to act as a guide?  
– Yes, he hated the idea of **acting** as a guide. (No, he snatched the opportunity of **acting** as a guide).

*Prompts:* to change her job, to move to the south, to go on a diet, to learn Japanese, to go to the party, to borrow their typewriter, to have dinner with them, to listen to their new records, to spend an evening with them, to go for a swim.

**Ex. 19. Answer the questions using gerunds as attributes.**

1. Do you have any experience in teaching English? 2. What methods of introducing new words do you know? 3. What is the most effective method of introducing new words? 4. What is the best way of improving listening comprehension? 5. What is the best way of developing oral speech habits? 6. Are you in the habit of rising early? 7. His habit of interrupting people irritates you, doesn't it? 8. Is it easy or difficult to change one's way of living? 9. There's an opportunity of studying a third foreign language at the Institute, isn't there? 10. Playing cards is a silly way of spending free time, isn't it?

**Ex. 20. Say what the teacher told you to do before reading the text.**

Model: to copy the new words → The teacher told us to copy the new words before **reading** the text.

*Prompts:* to learn the new words, to pronounce the new words in chorus, to do exercise 7, to do labwork No 3, to copy four sentences containing words in bold type, to make up sentences with the new words, to copy all the irregular verbs, to review the functions of the gerund, to copy six sentences with the gerund as an adverbial modifier of time after the prepositions *in, on (upon), before, after, at*.

**Ex. 21. Say what Nelly did at (on) hearing it.**

Model: The bell (to go to open the door) → At (on) **hearing** the bell she went to open the door.

*Prompts:* his footsteps (to stop), the news (to get excited), the news of his arrival (to hurry home), the story (to grin), the news (to decide to leave), his voice (to run to meet him), the news of his departure (to give way to despair), the noise (to look out of the window), the question (not to trouble herself to reply).

**Ex. 22. Say what you saw (noticed, felt, did) yesterday on returning home from the Institute.**

Model: to go to the kitchen and prepare dinner → On **returning** home I went to the kitchen and prepared dinner.

*Prompts:* to see a telegram on our living-room table, to see a letter from my brother on the dining-room table, to write a letter to my aunt, to water the flowers and clean the room, to take my temperature and go to bed, to notice a small statuette on our living-room shelf, to help my younger brother with his English, to feel that my nerves were at breaking point, to feel that I was running a temperature, to see that my mother was taking down the old curtains.

**Ex. 23. Ask your neighbour to change the sentences using the gerund as an adverbial modifier of time.**

Model: When I was doing the exercise I missed a sentence. → In **doing** the exercise I missed a sentence.

1. When she was reading she missed a line. 2. When he came up to the desk he produced his pass. 3. She watched TV and went back to her room. 4. She seemed excited when she heard the news. 5. She paused for half a minute and then she said 'Yes'. 6. Read the instructions carefully and then fill in the form. 7. When she saw us she crossed the street. 8. When he entered the room he saw a lot of familiar faces.

**Ex. 24. Say in what way they got out of doing it.**

Model: Peter (to do the work, to pretend to be ill) → Peter got out of doing the work by **pretending** to be ill.

*Prompts:* 1. Mary (to wash up, to pretend to be busy). 2. Tom (to make the tea, to hide somewhere). 3. My sister (to cook breakfast, to go out). 4. My brother (to iron his shirts, to pretend to have a headache). 5. Alan (to sweep the room, to go to the toilet). 6. Bill (to peel potatoes, to pretend to have a toothache). 7. Hellen (to baby-sit, to pretend to be busy). 8. Jane (to mend her brother's socks, to pretend to be tired). 9. Susan (to lay the table, to pretend to be busy). 10. My cousin (to wash windows, to pretend to have a sore throat).

**Ex. 25. Give responses to the following cues.**

Model: Tom lost your dictionary, but he promised to buy you a new one, didn't he? → Yes. He made up for it by **promising** to buy me a new dictionary.

1. You lost your brother's book, but you bought him a new one, didn't you?  
2. Mary was rude to her friend, but she apologized, didn't she?  
3. You were impolite to your friend, but you apologized, didn't you?  
4. You ate all your sister's sweets, but you bought her a bar of chocolate later, didn't you?  
5. The waiter spilt some soup on your clothes, but he paid for the dry cleaning, didn't he?  
6. Tom was very lazy in class, but he worked hard at home in the evening, didn't he?

**Ex. 26. Say how it is (was) done. Use the gerund with the preposition *by*.**

1. How did you turn off the tape-recorder? (to push the stop button). 2. How do we show other people that we are happy? (to smile). 3. How did he get rid of rats in the building? (to put rat poison). 4. How did Tom improve his listening comprehension? (to listen). 5. How did Grandma amuse the children? (to tell them a funny story). 6. How did you find out what 'cancel' means? (to use a dictionary). 7. How do we satisfy our hunger? (to eat). 8. How do we quench our thirst? (to drink water). 9. How did they decide who would get the last piece of pie? (to flip a coin).

**Ex. 27. Complete the following, using gerunds.**

**A. as subject or predicative (use the verbs given in bold type in the sentences in brackets).**

1. (Why **go** into every detail?) I think it's no use ... 2. (Did he realize what risk he **was running** when he tried **to land** the plane on such a small clearing in the wood?) He knew only too well that ... was ... but there was

no alternative. 3. (Now you **keep** strict hours of meals.) ... must do you a lot of good. 4. (The children **watched** the monkeys go through different tricks). It was such fun ... . 5. (We could not **get in** that night). All tickets were sold out, there was no ... . 6. (I see you are going **to assemble** your bicycle). Is it worth while ... so long before the beginning of the season? 7. (It was so very pleasant **to be** free and alone). What I enjoyed most in that quiet corner after the noise of the city and the strain of the last two months was ... . 8. (The boy **cried** over the broken toy). 'Is it any good ... ?' the mother said to the child. 'Tears are no help in sorrow'. 9. (I did not expect **to find** you there). It was quite unexpected ... . 10. (You **distort** facts and **turn** things upside down.) This is ... , it is ... . 11. (He liked **to collect** postage stamps.) a) ... was a hobby with him. b) His hobby was ... . 12. (When one **reads** without paying attention to the language, one **robs** oneself of great intellectual pleasure.) ... is ... .

#### B. as part of a compound predicate.

1. Has it stopped ... ? 2. We must go on ... . 3. The guide began ... . 4. The doctor continued ... . 5. When will you finish ... ? 6. When the motors ceased ... . 7. Before the band started ... . 8. The boy kept on ... . 9. His temper kept ... . 10. Doctor Flegg began ... . 11. He kept ... . 12. Now I will go on ... . 13. Author started ... . 14. All the time he was talking to me I went on ... . 15. The officer finished ... . 16. Suddenly he darted and began ... . 17. In the silence he started ... . 18. He immediately stopped ... . 19. When a ship goes off their coast they cannot help ... . 20. Her laughter was so infectious that I could not help ... . 21. In spite of myself I could not help ... . 22. She just continued ... .

#### C. as a non-prepositional object.

1. Don't put off ... . 2. You should avoid ... . 3. He hates ... . 4. The book (poem, picture, film, proverb) is worth ... . 5. She does not seem to mind ... . 6. I don't think he remembers ... . 7. I don't regret ... . 8. Do you intend ... ? 9. Towards the end of the term the students are busy ... . 10. Everyone enjoyed ... . 11. The car (stockings, house, shoes) wants (want) ... . 12. They denied ... . 13. The father suggested ... . 14. He never mentioned ... . 15. Just imagine ... . 16. They don't seem to have attempted ... . 17. Mel was aware that he disliked ... . 18. He had practically given up ... . 19. Her mother mentioned ... . 20. I hate ... . 21. I distinctly remember ... . 22. It involved ... . 23. She would have enjoyed ... . 24. Would you mind ... . 25. He lost his mother at a young age and he badly needs ... . 26. I don't mind ... . 27. Presently he suggested ... .

#### D. as a prepositional object.

1. He never thought of ... . 2. The boy is very clever at ... . 3. I don't insist on ... . 4. Does anyone object to ... ? 5. His friends accused him of ... . 6. Children ought to be prevented from ... . 7. I am not used to ... . 8. Nobody

suspected us of ... 9. He was quick in ... 10. Did he confess to ... ? 11. We were tired of ... 12. Why do you persist in ... ? 13. We are most grateful to our guide for ... 14. Who would have thought him capable of ... ? 15. Did you succeed in ...? 16. I found them engaged in ... 17. Who is responsible for ... ? 18. George wrote that he could not think of ... 19. Presently we were talking about ... 20. But that won't prevent you from ... 21. You would tell me anything to keep me from ... 22. Thank you for ... 23. They persisted on ... 24. You haven't thanked me yet for ... 25. He knew how to flatter her father into ... 26. He has not succeeded in ... 27. She was counting on ... 28. I could barely restrain myself from ... 29. Again they looked at each other sulkily this time, as if each suspected the other of ... 30. He insists on ... 31. My sister was never tired of ... 32. I was looking forward to ... 33. You are quite sure about ... 34. I'm good at ... 35. Ann was aware of ...

**E. as an attribute.**

1. It was very kind of you to have taken the trouble of ... 2. The idea of ... was extremely exciting. 3. I can't make out the reason for ... 4. There was little hope of ... 5. He is well known for his skill in ... 6. In summer you will have the chance of ... 7. Do you have any objections to ... ? 8. At the party I had the pleasure of ... 9. He displayed no interest in ... 10. He very quickly got into the habit of ... 11. You should have seen her surprise at ... 12. They snatched at the opportunity of ... 13. I've got no experience in ... 14. We took precautions against ... 15. This is the most perfect instrument for ... 16. What is the most effective method of ... ? 17. I have really had no intention of ... 18. She has planned a way of ... 19. He had some vague scheme of ... 20. It was clear the dog had no intention of ... 21. She gave the impression of ... 22. Not much in the habit of ... 23. The Captain had the reputation of ... 24. He had an opportunity of ... 25. I found the cause of ... 26. It occurred to me that there was an easy way of ... 27. He was possessed with a wild notion of ... 28. There was a reason for not ... 29. Ralph spoke in the hope of ... 30. I had, of course, no means of ... 31. With him there she stood a better chance of ... 32. He described the methods of ... 33. I have the idea of ... 34. I got the knack of ... 35. This gave him a sense of ...

**Ex. 28. Use the gerund instead of the subordinate clauses. Insert prepositions if necessary.**

1. I remember Mother reprimanded me when I spoiled her favourite fish-cake. 2. We recommended that work should start at once. 3. Thank you that you reminded me. 4. Nick suggested that we should dine at a restaurant to celebrate this little event. 5. He doesn't like when you interfere. 6. He prevents when I help him. 7. Nobody knew that they had agreed to take

part in the expedition. 8. I insist that everything should be said in plain words so that there can't be any misunderstanding. 9. She dislikes when the children prompt one another and always gets angry. 10. He wrote he would stay in Paris another week and did not explain why he was obliged to do so. 11. I can't recollect that they ever invited me to stay a weekend with them. 12. He was afraid that the news might cause excitement among the girls. 13. She disliked that he was so stubborn and would never listen to her reasons. 14. Nell denies that he is a bore. 15. I prefer that we should make use of tape-recording before we read the text. 16. Nobody objects that Peter lives with us. 17. We decided that we should join them in Glasgow.

**Ex. 29. Make up sentences using the following constructions with the gerund.**

1. could not help smiling; 2. on hearing the news; 3. the habit of reading in bed; 4. a chance of speaking to her; 5. avoided looking at her; 6. without saying good-bye; 7. grew tired of repeating; 8. remember reading; 9. had no intention of going; 10. gave up the idea of going; 11. worth taking a little trouble over; 12. instead of reading; 13. on the point of bursting into tears; 14. give up smoking; 15. after telling her (him); 16. would you mind my showing; 17. what do you mean by saying; 18. before answering; 19. serves him right for helping; 20. forgive me for being.

**Ex. 30. Make up sentences, using the gerund after the following verbs:**

Stop, finish, prevent, avoid, dislike, risk, deny, remember, postpone, enjoy, fancy, imagine, forgive, excuse, suggest, keep, mind, rely, regret, it wants (needs).

**Ex. 31. Divide the given verbs, adjectives and nouns into groups. In the first column give those, which require only the gerund; in the second – only the infinitive; in the third those, which may take both the gerund and the infinitive. Give 5 sentences to each column using various forms of the gerund and infinitive. Give a story using as many words as you can from all the three columns:**

avoid, object, enjoy, like, prefer, insist, succeed, prevent, hope, manage, agree, begin, stop, finish, think, approve, remember, forgive, mend, intend, busy, worth, afraid, glad, sorry, proud, ashamed, happy, capable, fond, delighted, anxious, ready, able, hope, intention, possibility, opportunity, thought, chance, necessity, time, habit.

**Ex. 32. Opening the brackets use a gerund or an infinitive.**

1. I don't like (read) very much. This book is dull. I don't like (read) it. 2. Do you prefer (travel), or (stay) at home? We won't go, if you prefer (stay) at home. 3. If you are going to buy a car, you'll have to learn (drive). I'd learnt (drive) the car long before I bought it. 4. I teach (ride) in my spare time. I'll teach you (ride) a horse. 5. I should hate (break in) your conversation. 6. Do you like (look) at pictures? Would you like (look) at these photos of your holiday? 7. He is hungry; he wants (finish up) the cold meat. Is anybody hungry? The cold meat wants (finish up). 8. Surely you don't need (work) so late at night. Those spoons need (wash) in soap and water. 9. Do you mean (take) this exam? If so, it means (work) very hard.

**Ex. 33. Make the verb in the brackets either a gerund or an infinitive.**

1. She wants to begin (work) regularly next term. 2. It's time for us to start (walk). 3. What made you decide to stop (work) at the factory? 4. Why does he keep (repeat) the same thing? 5. I can't bear (be) alone for long. 6. We started (load) our bags with food. 7. It seemed she would never stop (run). 8. Soon she finished (cook). 9. They left off (study) at the library earlier in the afternoon. 10. He gave up (smoke). 11. She turned and burst out (laugh). 12. They paid no attention to the noise and went on (walk).

**Ex. 34. Supply a gerund or an infinitive in place of the verb in brackets according to the meaning of the sentence.**

1. Does your car need (wash)? I certainly need (wash) mine. 2. Just try (be) a little more cooperative. 3. This room wants (repair). 4. Please remember (wipe) your feet before coming in. 5. I completely forgot (lock) the front door last night. 6. These stockings need (mend). 7. We regret (inform) you that your subscription is overdue. 8. Don't forget (bring) your bathing suit with you. 9. What is he doing? He's just trying (open) the tin. 10. Although he is only five, he learnt (write) very quickly. 11. You should try (use) petrol, if you can't get it off with water. 12. I've been learning (skate) for three years and I still fall down all the time. 13. Do you really need (buy) all that stuff? 14. Do you remember (meet) Anne in my office last year?

**Ex. 35. Complete the sentences, using a gerund or an infinitive.**

1. It's hardly worth while ... . 2. They are quite incapable of ... . 3. I wouldn't dare ... . 4. Let me know if you decide ... . 5. We are sick and tired of ... . 6. Never in my life did I expect ... . 7. He congratulated me on ... . 8. The company undertakes ... . 9. I hope you don't mind ... . 10. They tried to keep on ... . 11. I know my work is not good but I mean ... . 12. He always avoids ... . 13. He won't risk ... . 14. You will never regret ... . 15. We must try to stop ... .

**Ex. 36. State the functions of the gerund and the participle.**

1. Over these complicated documents Miss Katty mused for long hours, taking notes. 2. He waited for about three quarters of an hour before departing. 3. Instead of decreasing the sound seemed to be coming nearer. 4. After saying this, he cursed himself for not having said the opposite. 5. Without drawing another breath, he regained his feet. 6. At any other time he would have felt joy at having this person in his house. 7. Remembering the incident later, he could recall only a confused impression of fear and sorrow. 8. Having answered her with rudeness he felt very bitter indeed. 9. Some six months ago he had turned cold on receiving a polite and regretful notification from the local council on the confiscation of a plot of land from his garden. 10. She went over to the cabinet, picking her way between the cushions, footstools, and occasional tables with which the floor was strewn. 11. Having knocked several times and getting no answer she stepped back and looked up at the closely curtained windows. 12. Being too particular about her behaviour, she felt herself incapable of doing so. 13. Putting together the answers would provide the required information.

**Ex.37. State whether the *-ing-form* is the gerund or the verbal noun. Give your reasons.**

1. Liza was able to make her own living by working at a factory. 2. When I imagined that on seeing his pictures I should get a clue to the understanding of his strange character I was mistaken. 3. He could feel that he was very close to a beginning of some sort, but he couldn't tell what sort it would be. 4. Helen doesn't jib at the washing-up and Dong is so handy on the boat. 5. He translated quite mechanically, without paying attention to the words as he wrote them one after the other. 6. It was everywhere perfectly still, save for the rustling of leaves and birds. 7. But the most striking thing about him was the feeling he gave you of suppressed fire. 8. You stay here, my man. No slipping off to warn your master. 9. ... he hadn't time for worrying about the weather. 10. The diary is useful for recording the idiosyncrasies of other people – but not one's own. 11. I didn't at all like the prospect of having to break the bad news to him.

**Ex. 38. Point out predicative constructions with the gerund in the following sentences and define their functions.**

1. I hate the idea of Larry making such a mess of his life. 2. Later, in the night, I was awakened by the sound of someone moving softly about the room. 3. Do you think here is much chance of one seeing him again? 4. Well, it was the same fellow. And do you remember me saying that I was sure I had seen him somewhere before? 5. 'Will you pay attention if I



forbid you to go?' 'No, darling', I said, 'none'. Then she said, 'That's what I imagined. In that case there doesn't seem to be much point in my forbidding it'. 6. What can be the possible use of Larry's learning dead languages? 7. Jane bit her lip till the blood came, and walked back to her seat without another word, but she couldn't help the tears of rage rolling down her face. 8. 'Well', he said, 'I couldn't help Irene's having no money'. 9. He had called there three times now without her being able to see him. 10. His having come home so late has caused her much anxiety. 11. I'm afraid just at first he'll be rather lonely and I shall feel more comfortable if I can count on your keeping an eye on him. 12. I shan't mind its coming out a hundred or so over the mark.

**Ex. 39. Define the structure of predicative constructions with the gerund in the following sentences.**

1. The blood returned to Michael's heart. Curious how he had dreaded its having anything to do with her. 2. Arthur was proud of his unselfishness, and Miriam added to her family duties the job of trying to prevent her mother imping more than necessary on her husband's ordered life. 3. Nothing keeps me going but the sight of other people spending money. 4. Fancy her wanting to know what was troubling him! 5. I shall want you lying on your face just there with your elbows on the ground and your head up. 6. The entrance of the manager was marked by Sir Lawrence's monocle dropping on to his coat-button with a tinkle. 7. Whatever she thought about his being at the station with her mother, and Louise could not help wondering what she thought, she did not show it. 8. 'It's due to the pancreas, they say. That's a thing that lays under your stomach like a fish under a stone'. He cleared his throat, looked at Louise and added, 'If you'll excuse my mentioning it'. 9. What reason is there to suppose that our bumps of benevolence will increase in time to stop our using these great new toys of destruction, Michael! 10. ... the ordinary public will take your Marquesan seriously, and resent your making him superior to themselves. 11. The sight of her mother dabbing gently with a mop annoyed Miriam ... 12. He did not recollect such a thing having happened to him before.

**Ex. 40. Use the gerund in the required form as the second part of the predicative constructions with the gerund.**

1. He had declared that his stepfather would not hear of his (to marry) a penniless girl. 2. I remember your father, Mr. James, (to come) into the office the morning the Franco-Prussian war was declared – quite in his prime then, hardly more than sixty, I should say. 3. The whole place is in a bustle, and the chances of one particular person (to notice) telephoning or getting into the express are very small indeed. There was no point, how-

ever, in Eva (to discuss) the play with her, since Louise thought it a sordid and unreal concoction and could not see what all the fuss was about. 5. My friend, Doctor Sheppard, said something of the butler (to suspect)? 6. He had a superstitious fear that if even one day passed without his (to add) to the book he would lose himself again in that drab labyrinth of un-doing. 7. There's no sense in your (to agonize) over me. I'm all right, do you hear? I just want to be left alone to run my own life without the family (to butt) in all the time. 8. I had reached this point in my meditations, when I was aroused by the sound of the door (to open). 9. Ann did not mind her (to come) to see the baby, but she would not let her help with it. 10. They told me all about his (to be) there, and the questions he had asked. 11. I must beg, that in the case of my (to be able) to contribute something to the solution of the mystery, my name may not be mentioned. 12. I'm tired of people (to have) to be kind to me. 13. I'm eight years older than you are – oh! I don't mind M. Poirot (to know) that – ! 14. Louise had been going to say something diplomatic about women (to like) fat men, but was glad she did not ... . 15. 'I never dreamed of her (to be) the thief', I expostulated.

**Ex. 41. Form predicative constructions with the gerund out of the elements in brackets.**

1. They might, she always felt, disapprove of (women, to smoke) in public halls. 2. ... I did ask her why she could not sleep and what kept (she, to think) so much as she listened to the nightingale. 3. 'It's not much good (me, to spend) half an hour writing to your uncle if he changes his mind the next letter he gets from you', said the headmaster irritably. 4. Kate smiled at (Anthony, to shift) on his chair. 5. 'I couldn't stop (she, to come here)'. He spread his hands helplessly. 6. If you don't object to (me, to accompany) you as far as the door, sir ... ? 7. Louise did not mind staying there, although she was always glad to get away to a bath with hot water, and a meal without (dogs, to clamour) round the table. 8. No one would dream of (he, to be) so near at hand. 9. Slipping into the room like a ghost, she crept into her grandmother's bed, and finished (she, to cry) unchided until she fell asleep. 10. 'You must not mind our (to be surprised)', she said. 11. After all I'm partly to blame for (you, to miss) the train so the least I can do is to help you out of a jam. 12. ... there was still a chance of (Bart, to come). 13. Naturally, I realise that this pleurisy will put her back a bit, but I suppose it won't prevent (she, to be) out by the end of October?

**Ex. 42. Recast the following sentences so as to use predicative constructions with the gerund. Use prepositions where required.**

1. Presently I became aware that someone was moving softly about this room. 2. I was about to suggest that you should lunch with me. 3. For my

part I had never before suspected that Kate had a deep vein of superstition in her nature. 4. I cut short his lamentations, by suggesting that we should start for the camp at once. 5. I like you so much because you are such a good cook. 6. I boasted that my father was different; he would understand that I was an artist. 7. She took a peculiar delight in the fact that he was Peter's son. 8. He felt proud of the fact that he had been able to win a woman whom everybody admired. 9. She gave no sign that she heard that he had slammed the door. 10. She insisted that he should drop his voice. 11. He was clever, no one had ever denied that he was clever.

**Ex.43. Complete the following so as to use predicative constructions with the gerund.**

- A. 1. You don't seem to mind their ... . 2. What is the reason of his ... ? I don't understand what prevents her ... . 3. There's no sense in your ... . 4. She finished her ... . 5. He dropped the subject without my ... . 6. Louise didn't like to run the risk of her ... . 7. He liked the idea of their ... . 8. They saved time by Tom's ... . 9. There was no excuse for Isabel's ... . 10. There was no possibility of David's ... . 11. I was awakened by the sound of someone ... . 12. I sat there listening to Arthur ... . 13. I don't like her ... . 14. He was right in his ... . 15. There is no point in my ... . 16. Bobby gave no sign of his ... . 17. There was an absolute proof of his ... . 18. Forgive my ... . 19. It was the only excuse for her ... .
- B. 1. He insisted on ... . 2. We are thinking of ... . 3. It is a question of ... . 4. He is not interested in ... . 5. She is very fond of ... . 6. He left without ... . 7. She is tired of ... . 8. There is no use of ... . 9. We both enjoy ... . 10. We went straight home instead of ... . 11. I don't feel like ... . 12. He has no intention of ... . 13. We congratulated him on ... . 14. Do you mind ... . 15. Thank you for ... . 16. The driver couldn't avoid ... . 17. We are considering ... . 18. There is little chance of ... . 19. You can't blame him for ... . 20. We finally succeeded in ... . 21. The picture was worth ... . 22. It was no good ... . 23. I am not trying to accuse you ... . 24. The driver kept ... . 25. I see no harm ... . 26. We had no hope ... . 27. He got this job ... . 28. We couldn't help ... . 29. Can you afford ... ? 30. Who is responsible ... ?

## Revision Exercises

**Ex. 1. State the form of the gerund.**

1. I was bewildered, but I knew that it was no good asking him to explain.  
 2. In a low voice, in answer to Mr. Philips' questions, he denied having ordered anything from Parkson's in June. 3. ... people got annoyed at being

sent to a place that had, perhaps, been let some time. 4. After being invalidated out of the Army I had been given a recruiting job ... . 5. Poirot was busy mopping a grey suit with a minute sponge. 6. Her remarks at being dragged out of bed at that hour of a Sunday morning were expressed frankly and unprofessionally ... . 7. It was useless arguing with Jan when she looked like that. 8. He is matron's dog but he insists on being introduced to all the new patients. 9. The old man did not remember him, but he asked the doctor a number of questions without paying attention to the replies. 10. If the Captain comes off the bridge I want you to thank him for having looked after your wife so beautifully. 11. At first, as I told you, I was inclined to suspect her of being concerned in the crime. 12. A dish of coffee and milk was respectfully submitted to the cat, who drank it contemptuously and then retired to her box of shavings with an air of having sustained an insult. 13. ... but before long it was obvious that our other arms, stuck out as they were, were in imminent danger of being torn away. 14. His voice gave the effect, somehow, of being forced through a narrow tube. 15. ... I did not like to run the risk of being seen with people whom they would not at all approve of.

**Ex. 2. Define the function of the gerund.**

1. Reginald took a deep breath of his cigarette. 'It's ghastly, this idea of going back', he said. 2. He is said to pride himself on keeping his word. 3. At last he finished writing and put the cap on his pen. 4. After pausing a few minutes respectfully, so as not to spoil his effect, I gave him Lawrence's message. 5. I remembered coming home in the train and listening to the wheels saying 'I can do anything – I can do anything'. 6. Toby started off by holding me in the conventional way, with only one arm round me ... . 7. Moira was asleep. Sleeping was her latest discovery. 8. Madame Daubreuil was in the habit of visiting him here in the evenings. 9. That evening I went to a film and got to bed early and read for a while before going to sleep. 10. She couldn't go out of the room without saying something to him. 11. Mildly I said, 'I'm sorry you object to my bringing in a few of my own things ...' 12. Do you mind following me into the drawing-room, Constanca? I've something of great importance to discuss with you. 13. When she went on looking blank, I made my point a little clearer adding, 'You won't be able to cast it'. 14. I'm getting on, you know, Dolly, it's no good denying it. 15. All I'm interested in, is getting you better, see? 16. It's no good your flying in a temper. You've just got to listen.

**Ex. 3. Recast the following sentences so as to use predicative constructions with the gerund instead of subordinate clauses.**

1. Do you mind if I take your dictionary? 2. Do you think father would mind if we go to the park now? 3. She insisted we should put off our conference. 4. Linda was surprised. She had no idea that he was good at mathematics. 5. I was annoyed because they shouted so loud. 6. 'He's a dear little man', she said. 'I'd no idea you knew him'. 7. As we drove away he suggested that we should return by train. 8. Laura remembered she had left that umbrella standing in the corner. 9. She suggested that Philip should pass himself off as her brother. 10. A miner insisted that I should stay at his home. 11. Michael suggested that she should go to the Crimea to be near her mother. 12. Harold insisted that we wait for you. 13. He suggested that she should sit down. 14. She remembered that Charles had once said to her that the origin of poetry was emotion. 15. Julia suggested that they should go down.

**Ex. 4. Use the gerund or the infinitive of the verb in brackets. Insert prepositions where necessary.**

1. He had begun (to retrace) his steps when he at last caught sight of Bosinney. 2. Jan began (to walk) slowly down, her arm through Doreen's. 3. It began (to get) dark. 4. Then she began (to tremble), not that she was afraid, but at the thought of the people she would meet. 5. He finally refused (to eat) anything but boiled eggs. 6. The sun had begun (to sink) towards the high rim of the hills. 7. They began (to drive) across the island. 8. She began (to walk) up and down angrily. 9. The game begins (to be) dangerous. 10. I really begin (to believe) she was Blenkisop. 11. Jane continued (to discuss) her problems with no appreciation of his presence. 12. He stopped (to chat) with Joe from the scenario department. 13. Please, tell her it is necessary (to keep) the patient under morphia. 14. Tired? Do you want (to stop)? 15. Then, he went on (to give) me details. 16. Mr. Tower paused (to take) breath.

**Ex. 5. Insert the correct form of verbals (Participle, Gerund or Infinitive).**

1. It was silly of her not (think) of that beforehand. 2. She heard the slight sound of her curtains (draw) back. 3. The teacher (file) out of the room, the chairs began to scrape on the parquet floor, as the students rose from their desks. 4. The weather is reported (change) within the last two days. 5. The engineers were proud of (find) a way of (solve) this problem. 6. I don't want my sister (worry). 7. She caught sight of David (walk) along the footpath. 8. You seemed (get on) quite well with him. 9. I hate (call) friends by their surnames. 10. James was aware of his work (approve of) by the engineer. 11. That sort of news wants (break) gently. 12. By the same post I happened (write) to my mother-in-law in New York about some family matters. 13. He daughter was understood (dress) in her room for the last

two hours. 14. This request appeared in some mysterious way (act) as the last straw. 15. The boy looked at his mother, his face (redden). 16. She is sure (bring) her daughter back with her. 17. The young man proved (to be engaged) to her daughter.

## Test Yourself

### Ex. 1. Insert the appropriate preposition before the gerund.

1. Are you interested ... working for us? 2. Henry is excited ... leaving for India. 3. I'm not very good ... learning languages. 4. What are the advantages ... having a car? 5. I have no excuse ... being late. 6. The rain prevented us ... completing the work. 7. Thank you ... helping me carry the packages to the post office. 8. The knife is only ... cutting bread. 9. I have no intention ... lending you money. 10. I ran ten kilometres ... stopping. 11. Fred is always complaining ... having a headache. 12. Mrs. Grant insisted ... knowing the whole truth. 13. Laura had a reason ... not going to class yesterday. 14. I apologised to Diana ... making her wait for me. 15. Who is responsible ... washing and drying the dishes after dinner? 16. The angry look on his face stopped me ... speaking my mind. 17. Where should we go for dinner tonight? Would you object ... going to an Italian restaurant? 18. The mayor made another public statement for the purpose ... clarifying the new tax proposal. 19. The thief was accused ... stealing a woman's purse. 20. Bill isn't used ... wearing a suit and tie every day.

### Ex. 2. Use the gerund or infinitive of the verb in brackets.

1. They denied (steal) the money. 2. I don't enjoy (drive) very much. 3. I don't want (go out) tonight. I'm too tired. 4. I can't afford (go out) tonight. I haven't got enough money. 5. Had it stopped (rain) yet? 6. Can you remind me (buy) some coffee when we go out? 7. I refuse (answer) any more questions. 8. The baby began (cry) in the middle of the night. 9. Julia has been ill but now she's beginning (get) better. 10. When I was a child I hated (go) to bed early. 11. Would you like (sit) down? – No, thanks, I prefer (stand). 12. When I have to catch a train, I'm always worried that I'll miss it. So, I like (come) to the station in plenty of time. 13. It was a nice day, so we decided (go) for a walk. 14. I saw him (fall off) the wall. 15. I saw Ann (wait) for the bus.

### Keys:

Ex. 1. 1. in; 2. about; 3. at; 4. of; 5. for; 6. from; 7. for; 8. for; 9. of; 10. without; 11. of; 12. on; 13. for; 14. for; 15. for; 16. from; 17. to; 18. of; 19. of; 20. to.

- Ex. 2.** 1. stealing; 2. driving; 3. to go out; 4. to go out; 5. raining; 6. to buy; 7. to answer; 8. to cry; 9. to get; 10. going; 11. to sit down; standing; 12. to come (Am. coming); 13. to go; 14. fall off; 15. waiting.

## Translation Exercises

### Ex. 1. Translate into English.

- A. 1. Nav nozīmes mēī ināt viou pārliecināt: viou pārliecināta par savu taisnību. 2. Diez' vai včrts uztraukties par to. 3. Peldčđana ir viens no visveselīgākajiem sporta veidiem. 4. Tenisa spēļčđana darīja viouai daudz laba. 5. Lūgt viouam palīdzību ir velti ņī iest laiku. 6. Angiu valodas mācīdanās man sagādā lielu prieku. 7. Smčī čđana ir bīstama veselībai.
- B. 1. Vai tu jau beidzi rakstīt včstuli? 2. Man sagādā baudu klausīties gan klasisko, gan dpeza mūziku. 3. Būtu labāk, ja tu sāktu nodarboties ar dārzkopību. 4. Pārtrauc dzert kafiju pirms gulčtiešanas, un tu gulčsi daudz labāk. 5. Iedzer ņo tableti, un zobs vairs nesāpčs. 6. Turpiniet, es jūs klausos. 7. Es nevaru neapbrīnot savu dzimto pilsčtu. 8. Es nemīlu, kad man saka nepatiesību.
- C. 1. Viou radīs celties pulkst. 7 rītā. 2. Paldies, ka jūs man atgādinājāt par sapulci. 3. Es esmu noguris uz klausīt vioua padomus. 4. Mums izdevās ātri atrast vioua māju. 5. Nellīja aizraujas ar krustvārdu mīklu risināšanu. 6. Es uzstāju, ka mums jāatpūdas. 7. Tā vietā, lai stāvčtu un dotu padomus, jūs varčtu labāk palīdzčt. 8. Lai sagrieztu stiklu ir nepieciešams speciāls instruments. 9. Es neiebilstu pret to, ka būs jāpagaida pāris minūtes. 10. Vioua ierosināja nofotografčties. 11. Vioua biepi sūdzas par galvas sāpčm. 12. Grīdu vajag nokrāsot. 13. Zčns ir pelnījis, lai viou uzslavčtu. 14. Es atceros, ka nopirku ņo grāmatu, taču nezīnu, kur esmu to nolikusi. 15. Viou nevarčja man piedot, ka manis dčī zaudčjuđi tik daudz laika. 16. Es neatceros, ka viou būtu to teicis. 17. Atvainojiet, ka včlreiz atgādinu par to. 18. Es atceros, ka iemetu včstuli pastkastč.
- D. 1. Maz cerību, ka viou atnāks. 2. Viou neizrādīja, ka pazīnis viouus. 3. Jums nav pamata turčt viou aizdomās. 3. Sarīkojumā man bija tas prieks iepazīties at jūsu firmas pārstāvjiem. 4. Vasarā jums būs iespēja apmeklčt Latvijas skaistākās vietas. 5. Viouam ioti drīz izveidojās paradums celties pulkst. 5. no rīta. 6. Vai ir kāda cerība pagūt uz ņo vilcienu? 7. Viouam bija sajūta, ka viou izseko. 8. Es neredzu iemeslu, lai dusmotos.
- E. 1. Mēī iniet atrisināt krustvārdu mīklu, neieskatoties atbildčs. 2. Autobuss pabrauca garām pieturai pat nebremzčdam. 3. Viou izslčdza magnetafonu, nospiepot taustiou 'stop'. 4. Atgriezusies mājās, viou uzrakstīja vecākiem včstuli. 5. Pārrakstot tekstu, viou izlaida divus teikumus. 6. Dzirdot vioua soius, mčs atskatījāmies. 7. Lasot grāmatu, pievčrsiet uzmanību galveno

varoðu aprakstam. 8. Pirms pārejat ielu, apstājieties un paskatieties pa kreisi. 9. Padomājiet, pirms atbildat. 10. Uzklusējusi ðo ziðu, viða nobālçja. 11. Pārskatot vecås avizes, es atradu interesantu rakstu par vidçjo izglitibu Anglijâ. 12. Párnâcis mājâs, es piezvaniju draudzenei. 13. Man negribas staigât. 14. Viðð baidijas, ka par viðu smiesies.

**Ex. 2. Translate into English.**

- A. 1. Es atceros, ka redzçju ðo aktieri kâdâ citâ lugâ. 2. Es nepâstâvu uz to, lai mani uzklusïtu. 3. Viðð turçja mani aizdomâs, ka es biju izpauðis viða noslçpumu. 4. Nav vçrts to pieminçt. 5. Dïvaini, kâpçç viða izvairas runât par ðo tçmu. 6. Nevaru ciest, ka ar mani sarunâjas tâdâ tonï. 7. Rûpïgi apskatïjis manu pulksteņi, pulksteðmeistars teica, ka tas ir kârtïbâ, un to vajag tikai iztïrït un ieeïiot. 8. Viðð baidijâs, ka viðu sapratïs nepareizi. 9. Viðð atzinâs, ka mûs informçjis nepareizi. 10. Es domâju, ka tas nebija nopietni, kad viðð teica, ka vçlas mainït profesiju. 11. Viðð atgâdinâja, ka kâdreiz jau bija atteicies no ðï priekðlikuma, un lika man saprast, ka nav nozïmes vçtreiz ðo lietu apspriest. 12. Viða baidijâs sabojât savu pirmo iespaidu apskatot ðo gleznu vçtreiz. 13. Man pârmeta to, ka es nokavçju un liku visiem gaidït.
- B. 1. Es neuzstâju, lai mçs sâktu nodarboties ar ðo jautâjumu tûlit. 2. Nevarçja nepamanït viðas prieku. 3. Draugi sâka slavçt Nika balsi, un beigu beigâs vðð piekrita dziedât. 4. Viss ir atkarïgs no tâ, vai jûs spçsiet veikt visu nepiecieðamo. 5. Viðð nevarçja aiziet, nepalûdzis atïauju. 6. Kad tçvocis Podþers uzsâka kaut ko darït, viðð iesaistïja darbâ visu ï imeni un bija ioti satraukts, taðu viðam nekad nepietika spçka darït kaut ko paðam. 7. Tas ir ioti prâtïgs padoms, to der izmantot. 8. Tâ vietâ, lai nosûtïtu vçstuli pa e-pastu, es piezvanïðu pa telefonu. 9. Neviens neiebilda pret to, ka Frenks pârstâvçs firmu ðai izstâdç. 10. Ðo izteicienu lieto bieþi, vçrts to iemâcïties.

---

## THE INFINITIVE

---

**Ex. 1. State the form of the given infinitive.**

to be mentioned; to have known; to have been dealt; to be shouting; to have been wanting; to smile; to be dancing; to have been told; to have been travelling; to be asked; to be shut; to have said.

**Ex. 2. Supply forms according to the task.**



**A. Give the perfect form of the following infinitive (active voice):**  
to stay; to grow; to get; to have; to prefer; to continue; to sing; to see; to be;  
to cry; to sleep; to stop.

**B. Give the continuous form of the following infinitives (perfect and non perfect, active voice):**  
to go; to run; to arrive; to study; to cut; to live; to come; to copy; to dye; to tie; to swim; to listen.

**C. Give the passive form of the following infinitives (perfect and non-perfect):**  
to write; to give; to prove; to buy; to look for; to bring; to attack; to forget;  
to take care of; to play; to beat; to ring.

**D. Give all the possible forms of the following infinitives:**  
to work; to lie; to carry; to choose; to stand; to show; to lay; to laugh; to smoke; to like; to break; to strike.

**E. Supply all the missing forms of the following infinitives:**  
to be done; to have been talking; to have made; to be held; to have been tried; to be leaving; to be spoken of; to have risen; to have been spending; to be selling; to be raised; to ski.

**Ex. 3. Build the form of the infinitive according to the description (take any verb that can have the form).**

1. The passive non-perfect form. 2. The active perfect continuous form. 3. The active non-perfect non-continuous form. 4. The passive perfect form. 5. The active non-perfect continuous form. 6. The active perfect non-continuous form.

**Ex. 4.**

**A. Use the infinitive in the non-perfect form of the active or passive voice.**

1. I hate (to bother) you, but the man is still waiting (to give) a definite answer. 2. He hated (to bother) with trifling matters when he had many more important questions (to decide). 3. She would never miss a chance (to show) her efficiency, she was so anxious (to like) and (to praise). 4. The idea was too complicated (to express) in just one paragraph. It seemed it would take not less than a page (to put) it into words. 5. Is there anything else (to tell) him? I believe he deserves (to know) how the matter stands and (to tell) all about it. 6. The book is likely (to publish) and (to appear) on sale pretty soon. It is sure (to sell) well and (to sell) out in no time. 7. What he took to writing for was not (to earn) a living but a name. All he wanted was (to read) and not (to forget).

**B. Use the infinitive in the required form of the active voice.**

1. How fortunate he is (to travel) all over the world and (to see) so much of it. 2. The man appears (to know) practically all European languages; he is said (to learn) them while travelling. 3. The river was reported (to overflow) the banks and (to advance) towards the suburbs of the city. 4. The girl pretended (to read) a book and not (to notice) me. 5. You seem (to look) for trouble. 6. It seems (to rain) ever since we came here. 7. It is so thoughtful of you (to book) the tickets well in advance.

**C. Use the appropriate form of the infinitive.**

1. The man seemed (to study) me, and I felt uneasy in his presence. 2. Perhaps it would bother him (to tell) about the quarrel. 3. He is supposed (to work) at the translation of the book for two years. 4. The only sound (to hear) was the ticking of the grandfather's clock downstairs. 5. The book was believed (to lose) until the librarian happened (to find) it during the inventory. It turned out (to misplace). 6. The strength of the metal proved (to overestimate) by the designer. The engineer claimed (to warn) against its use for the purpose all along, as he had been always sure it was likely (to deform) under great load. 7. We seem (to fly) over the sea for quite a time and there is yet no land (to see). 8. Not (to answer) would have been a wrong step. 9. We don't seem (to acquaint), at least I can't remember ever (to meet) him. 10. The third key remained (to test).

**Ex. 5. Use the infinitive in brackets in the required form of the active or passive voice.**

1. And now that she was going to live in the country there was a chance for her (to turn) over a new leaf. 2. There was something about a dress in her bag that had (to iron). 3. We seem (to say) all there is (to say) – except good night. 4. I wanted no one (to take) notice of me, so that I could observe these famous creatures at my ease. 5. 'Well', he said, 'there's nothing more (to see) here'. 6. Did he ever ask you (to engage) or talk about marrying? 7. I wanted (to persuade) her (to clear) things up. – I mean to let things (to clear) up by you. 8. She seemed (to lose) heart in the business after that. 9. She would forgive him, because it was not a matter of any moment but rather something (to brush) aside lightly. 10. Henet was one of those people whose fate is (to devote) to others and to have no one devoted to them. 11. She asked this as she might (to ask) such a question a few years ago. 12. So it was with the idea of concealed dictaphones in mind, dictaphones, which could (to turn on) by the pressure of a toe. Thus loyalty could (to check) several times a day. 13. I hoped that I should never (to send) to that war. 14. Outside men's voices could (to hear). 15. The cows wound into the yard at evening (to milk).

**Ex. 6. Use the infinitive in brackets in the perfect or non-perfect form.**

1. She was relieved (to feel) she need not investigate, and probably would never hear the reason for this quarrel. 2. She had tried (to give) her a ring for Christmas, and failing that, got her (to accept) a gold watch but that must (to cost) two hundred dollars. 3. I started (to walk) on tiptoe. 4. She is not likely (to take) him into her confidence. 5. I've tried (to plan) you a house here with some self-respect of its own. 6. She would appear to listen and would remember nothing inconvenient, since her mind was sure (to be dwelling) on some problem connected with the children all the time. 7. We must (to sit) there, with scarcely a word, for well over an hour. 8. What happened is a very long time ago, I'm going (to ask) her to let bygones be bygones. 9. If she had done so, she would have been sure (to mention) the fact at once. 10. It had been the Christmas Eve custom of the Carters' (to hang up) their children's stockings and (to fill) them with inexpensive toys. 11. He promised (to come) and (to see) them before he left. 12. The big chandelier should (to be flooded) with light; but instead, all that happened was the clink of the switch. The room remained in the darkness. 13. She watched him with lips parted ready (to speak) at any minute. 14. I am a person who likes (to cross) a 't' and dot an 'i'. 15. I had no cases of special interest (to attend). 16. Regret would ripen into guilt, until he remembered her mother, who took so much upon herself, would (to be taken) care of. 17. 'Everyone seems (to be dying)', she said with a certain relish. 18. Irene's gone upstairs with a splitting headache. She wanted (to go) with you but I made her (to go) to bed.

**Ex. 7. Use either of the infinitives in brackets; give two variants where possible and explain the difference.**

1. But one demand he returned to again and again. He wanted (to make, to be made) a producer tomorrow. 2. I really do believe I'll be able (to sleep, to be sleeping) tonight. 3. The puzzle seemed (to fit, to be fitting) itself together piece by piece. 4. There wouldn't be many people about yesterday afternoon (to see, to have seen) him. 5. The things that Tuppence thought funny were, he knew by long experience, not really (to describe) by such an adjective at all. 6. They had not very long (to wait, to be waiting) however before the door opened and Miss Packard came in. 7. Behind the cupboard door there was a long list of rules, ending with: 'No nails (to drive, to be driven) into walls'. 8. You might (to change, to have changed) your mind about them. 9. If you were told (to do, to be doing) twice as much and by a superhuman effort achieved it, it would (to take, to be taken) as much for granted as your heart beat. 10. I was dropping with fatigue and would (to give, to have given) anything not (to go, to be going)

out. 11. Something seemed (to amuse, to be amusing) her immensely. 12. Tea was at four and the bread was new and had (to cut, to be cut). 13. His red cheeks seemed (to fall, to have fallen) in and he looked a positive wreck of his usual jolly, healthy self. 14. And what brings you (to see, to have seen) us so early, my good Japp? 15. And Evant was supposed (to be devoted, to have been devoted) to his master. 16. He wished Chilla was still there, and he could (to point, to have pointed) her out to him. 17. A great weight seemed (to roll, to have rolled) off my mind. 18. Here was something (to hold, to be held) off. But there were also greetings (to make, to be made). 19. And then, by the sound of his voice, she knew that they should (to go, to be going).

**Ex. 8. Use the infinitives with or without the particle to.**

1. I helped him (to find) his things. 2. He made me (to do) all the work again. 3. My neighbour let me (to borrow) his own car. 4. When I was a child I was made (to go) to the doctor whenever I felt ill. 5. I can't (to think) what made him (to do) such a thing. 6. I felt the insect (to crawl up) my arm. 7. Let's (to watch) the boys (to drive). 8. She heard him (to open) the door. 9. You'd better (to try) not (to think) about it. 10. I asked him if he was willing (to help) me (to do) the job. 11. She felt herself (to grow) red to the tips of her toes. 12. Why not (to allow) her (to do) as she likes? 13. Why not (to let) her (to do) as she likes? 14. They were seen (to come) to the corner and (to turn) to the left. 15. She was heard (to knock) on the door. 16. The boy helped him (to find) the way to the railway line in the dead of night. 17. He would rather (to die) than (to betray) his friends. 18. He was never known (to retreat). 19. Why not (to start) out now? We cannot wait for the weather (to change). 20. Have you ever heard him (to complain) of difficulties? 21. He was never heard (to complain) of difficulties. 22. You'll be lonely tomorrow. You'd better (to come) and (to dine) with us. 23. Don't let us (to waste) time. There are a hundred things (to be done). 24. I have never known him (to do) such things. 25. I know him (to have been) an actor once. 26. We had better (to make) haste. 27. You ought not (to sit up) so late. 28. What made you (to think) so? 29. 'Thanks', Andrew answered; 'I'd rather (to see) the cases for myself'. 30. He was made (to do) his work independently. 31. She seems (to know) a great deal about music. 32. I thought I would sooner (to go) to the gallery alone, but I was obliged (to accept) his company. 33. (to have gone through) what you have gone through is the lot of very few. 34. I'll have him (to tell) the truth. 35. Get them (to come) as early as possible. 36. All I have now time (to do) is (to send) them a telegram. 37. There is hardly anything (to do) but (to work out) an alternative plan.

**Ex. 9. Ask your friend if he (she) is sure somebody did it.**

Model: The students sang a song → Are you sure the students sang that song? – Yes, I heard them **sing** that song.

1. Peter booked the tickets. 2. Mrs White accepted the invitation. 3. The driver apologized. 4. The official explained how to fill in the form. 5. George wound the clock. 6. Larry switched off the light. 7. Mary turned off the water. 8. Tom invited his neighbour to the party. 9. Jane locked the door. 10. Sally warned Mike of the danger.

**Ex. 10. Make dialogues by analogy.**

Model: to take the key → Did Mary take the key? – Well, I didn't actually see her **take** it.

*Prompts:* to lock the door, to read the instructions, to weight the parcel, to post the letter, to swallow the tablet, to drink the coffee, to take the money, to do the English homework, to write the composition, to feed the dog, to take the medicine, to cook fish, to clean the apartment, to visit Sheila in the hospital, to wash her kitchen floor, to do her laundry, to speak to the dean.

**Ex. 11. Speak about Peter's behaviour. Say that you think that this is partly his parents' fault that he is so troublesome.**

Model: to shout at his sister → Peter shouted at his sister. – But why do you let him **shout** at his sister.

*Prompts:* to fight with the neighbours' children, to upset everyone, to answer back, to disobey his teachers, to break the furniture, to miss school every Monday, to watch TV all Saturday, to stay in bed all Sunday, to put his elbows on the table, to talk with his mouth full, to roller-skate up and down the corridors, to use awful language, to kick his brother.

**Ex. 12. Explain why Larry didn't do it.**

Model: to go to the movies → Why didn't Larry go to the movies? – I didn't let him go to the movies.

*Prompts:* to leave early, to phone his brother, to join the club, to bring his passport, to tell Sam about it, to buy a used car, to grow a moustache, to leave on the two o'clock train, to travel around the city by taxi, to come home by plane, to plant carrots, to wear his blue suit today, to give his brother a watch for his birthday.

**Ex. 13. Say what your parents made you do when you were a child.**

Model: to air the room just before going to bed → My parents made me **air** the room just before going to bed.

*Prompts:* to get dressed as soon as I got up in the morning, to wash my hands before I ate my meals, to clean my teeth after I had eaten my meals, to accompany them to the park on Sunday mornings, to apologize if I was rude to someone, to write a 'thank you' letter when I was given presents, to tidy up my room if it was untidy, to go to the doctor whenever I felt ill, to work harder if my work at school was bad.

**Ex. 14. Make dialogues by analogy.**

- Model: Mike (to answer the letter) →
- Mike answered the letter I hope.
  - Yes, I made him **answer** the letter.
  - Yes, he was made **to answer** the letter.

*Prompts:* Ann (to apologize to her teacher), Alice (to explain why she refused the invitation), Barbara (to write to the Smiths), Betsy (to clean the bath), Bridget (to take her medicine), Caroline (to wait for Doris), Eliza (to ring her parents), Emily (to make her bed), Ted (to clean his shoes), Walter (to wear his best suit), William (to insure his house), Oscar (to fasten his safety belt), Tom (to turn down the radio, Samuel (to shave off his beard).

**Ex. 15. Respond to the statements by giving advice or making recommendation.**

Model: I've got a toothache. (to go to the dentist) → You'd better **go** to the dentist.

1. Sam is terribly overweight. (to go on a diet)
2. Our train leaves in a few minutes. (to take our seats)
3. The rain is coming through the roof. (to get a builder to look at it tomorrow)
4. We're spending our holidays in Bulgaria next summer. (to start learning some Bulgarian)
5. This coat of mine is just about done for! (to think about buying a new one)
6. I'm feeling ill. (to see a doctor if you're still feeling ill tomorrow)
7. I don't understand today's grammar. (to ask the teacher to explain the rule once again)
8. Jim and Ada can't dance. They feel out of place at discotheques. (to take dance lessons)
9. Max is putting on weight. (to cut down on bread and potatoes)

**Ex. 16. Invite your friend to do something.**

Model: to walk to the hostel (to wait for a bus) → Let's walk to the hostel. Or would you rather wait for a bus? – I'd rather **walk** to the hostel.

*Prompts:* to ring the dentist today (to put it off till tomorrow), to go to the party as we are (to change into evening dress), to stay with my aunt's (to stay in a hotel), to finish it tonight (to leave it till tomorrow), to stay at home next weekend (to go hiking), to go to Moscow by train (to go there by plane), to mend our old TV set (to buy a new one), to fix the iron ourselves

(to send for an electrician), to wash the sheets at home (to take them to the launderette), to do our own typing (to employ a secretary), to tune the piano ourselves (to get a piano tuner), to do exercise 12 in writing (to do it orally), to read dialogue 11 (to listen to the recording first).

**Ex. 17. Put *to* where necessary before the infinitives.**

1. The teacher made me ... repeat it all over again. 2. You needn't ... ask for permission, I let you ... take my books wherever you like. 3. Will you help me ... move the table? 4. He is expected ... arrive in a few days. 5. You seem ... know the places very well. 6. You had better ... make a note of it. 7. I heard the door ... open and saw a shadow ... move across the floor. 8. He told me ... try ... do it once again. 9. I'd rather ... walk a little before going to bed. 10. There is nothing ...do but ... wait till somebody comes ... let us out. 11. You ought not ... show your feelings. 12. Why not ... wait a little longer? 13. I felt her ... shiver with cold. 14. We should love you ... stay with us. 15. You are not ... mention this to anyone. 16. We got Mother ... cut up some sandwiches. 17. Rose wanted them ... stop laughing, wanted the curtain ... come down. 18. I'll have ... go there. 19. There doesn't seem ... be anything wrong with you. 20. She helped me ... get over my fear.

**Ex. 18. Translate into Latvian, paying attention to the use of the particle *to*, which implies the verb already mentioned.**

1. He hadn't wanted to laugh then, nor did want to now. 2. You needn't say anything if you don't want to. 3. Michael knew a lot, or seemed to. 4. Well, let's forget it, shall we? – I'm glad to; thanks very much. 5. She always kept her mouth shut when told to. 6. It was my fault. I'm sorry. I didn't want to, I didn't mean to. 7. I know I should have come to you and told you about it, but I was afraid to. 8. I'd be glad to see you. Come any time you like. – Darling, you know I long to. But I can't. 9. You can't send that letter. – I am certainly going to, by air-mail from Port Said. 10. I couldn't do what I wanted to.

**Ex. 19. Respond to the following questions or statements, using the phrases from the list in brackets.**

1. They say you read a lot. 2. Why didn't you invite them? 3. Will you write a letter to her? 4. Why can't you go with us? 5. I'm afraid you can't come. 6. I see you haven't bought any oranges. 7. You must take more care of it. 8. She says you are going to help her. 9. Why didn't you dance with him? 10. You didn't sign your test paper.

(Not so much I used to; I simply didn't want to; Yes, if you wish me to; But I'll try to; I'm not allowed to; I mean to, but I forgot; Yes, I ought to; I suppose I'll have to; He didn't ask me to; No, I forgot to.)

**Ex. 20. State the function of the infinitive. Translate the sentences into Latvian.**

1. He folded the paper, put it in his pocket and went home to show it to his wife. 2. She was frank enough to admit that she had only achieved her own fine sense of humour by the most arduous study and concentration. 3. She considered her engagement book, nodded, and began to make notes. 4. It was just that the only way to be nasty to her father in that connection was to take her mother's side. 5. But their paths never seemed quite to cross. 6. He went into his room, shut the door, and sat down to his desk to study. 7. To resign now would be an admission of failure. 8. 'May I be seated?' he said, seating himself heavily. 9. No one thought to look in the boiler. 10. He heard a car pull up before the house and a horn honk. 11. And yet he was perceptive enough to understand too that the town had begun slowly but inexorably to re-evaluate him. 12. Bently did not want Danny Beeman to come to dinner at all. 13. Philip felt himself turn bright red. 14. It was impossible not to like him when he was like this, and Philip, despite himself, felt a little smile start and grow at his lips. 15. I am going to tell you something to save your life. 16. It isn't necessary for us to leave so soon. The show doesn't start till eight. 17. The trouble was that the very examples she used to prove her point were the ones that served to convince him most firmly that it would be impossible to find a better place. 18. He stopped to buy an evening paper. 19. It is easier to pull down than to build.

**Ex. 21. Ask another student how much time it took him to do it.**

Model: to get to the station by bus → How much time did it take you to get to the station by bus? – It took me twelve minutes **to get** to the station by bus.

*Prompts:* to get to the institute by tram, to get home on foot, to learn a poem, to do his bed, to make his bed, to prepare his breakfast, to do his homework, to read the story, to look up the words in the dictionary, to translate the article from Latvian into English, to write the composition, to revise those lessons, to discuss the topic, to study the problem, to learn Spanish (German, French).

**Ex. 22. Answer the questions.**

Model: Which is more fun: to study at the library or to go to the zoo? – I think it's more fun **to study** at the library than **to go** to the zoo.

1. Which is easier: to make money or to spend money? 2. Which is more difficult: to write English or to read English? 3. Which is easier: to read English or to speak English? 4. Which is more expensive: to go to a movie or to go to a concert? 5. Which is more comfortable: to wear shoes or to go



barefoot? 6. Which is more interesting: to talk to people or to watch people? 7. Which is more satisfying: to give gifts or to receive them? 8. Which is more dangerous: to ride in a car or to ride in an airplane? 9. Which is more important: to come to class on time or to get an extra hour of sleep in the morning? 10. Which is better: to give or to take?

**Ex. 23. Express your point of view.**

1. Is it important for students to do their homework? 2. Is it necessary for students to budget their time? 3. Is it important for teachers to speak clearly? 4. Is it difficult for a child to sit still a long time? 5. Is it easy to understand your teacher? 6. Will it be possible for people to take trips to the moon in the next century? 7. Is it possible for a fish to live out of water for more than a few minutes? 8. Is it traditional for Americans to eat turkey on Thanksgiving Day? 9. Is it customary at a formal party for the guests to wait until the hostess begins to eat?

**Ex. 24. Change the structure of the following sentences so as to use the infinitive as subject.**

1. The question is not so easy to answer. 2. There was no necessity to re-do it. 3. The thought of it cheered him up. 4. I was amazed to see it. 5. He felt ashamed when he read the letter. 6. Worrying and fussing was useless. 7. All they wanted was to make themselves understood. 8. He wanted to see the play staged as soon as possible. 9. My companion was discreet enough not to mention it. 10. I must ask a few questions on the matter. It is my duty. 11. You say he kept his opinion to himself. Is it usual of him? 12. How greatly disappointed we were when we found that it was only a joke! 13. The sight of them made us laugh. 14. The sculpture was completely ruined. The restoration was impossible. 15. The car's engine is out of order. The repair will take not less than two days.

**Ex. 25. Tell other students about your plans for today (for this Sunday, for this weekend, for the summer holidays, for the future).**

Model: to take a course in vegetarian cooking → My plan for the future is **to take** a course in vegetarian cooking.

*Prompts:* to move to London, to bake one of my delicious apple pies, to go skiing, to have a picnic with my friends, to clean up my living room, to study Italian, to train as a tourist guide, to go hiking to the mountains, to become a school teacher, to buy a dog, to go to the Crimea, to learn to swim, to listen to music, to wash my windows, to take dance lessons, to take my younger brother to the zoo, to write to my grand mother.

**Ex. 26. Use the infinitive as predicative.**

1. Our plan was ... . 2. To act like this meant ... . 3. The first thing he did was ... . 4. The main problem is ... . 5. Our next step must be ... . 6. What I want is ... . 7. Our only chance to see him is ... . 8. To ask him a straight question means ... . 9. My hobby is ... . 10. The best way to master a foreign language is ... . 11. The next thing to be done is ... . 12. Our aim was ... . 13. To say so means ... . 14. His only wish is ... .

**Ex. 27. Make up sentences so as to use the infinitive in bold type as predicative.**

1. your next task, the results, **to check up**, of the observations, is. 2. I meant, was, the last thing, **to offend** you. 3. every success, and, I have come for, is, **to wish** you, what, **to congratulate** you. 4. on the subject of research, **to write**, his job, abstracts of articles, was, in the laboratory. 5. could do you good, is, the only thing, **to take** a long rest, that. 6. **to see** himself, the most exciting experience, for the first time, was, he had ever had, in a film. 7. an experienced lawyer, was, the next move, **to consult**, he had made. 8. what turn, is, the best thing, things will take, to do, **to see**, now.

**Ex. 28. Make sentences. Use the infinitives after the verbs expressing the beginning, duration and end of an action.**

Model: to work → Bob began (started, continued, finished, ceased) to work.

*Prompts:* to talk about the problem, to read his book even though the children were making a lot of noise, to eat around seven, to help me with my English, to go to school when he was seven, to look for a new job, to grow tomatoes in his garden, to take dance lessons, to be interested in the problem, to ask Mary about her brother.

**Ex. 29. Ask another student if Peter has finished to do it.**

Model: to paint his apartment → Has Peter finished to paint his apartment yet?

– No. He began **to paint** it three hours ago.

*Prompts:* to dust the furniture, to clean the rooms, to clean the carpets, to polish the silver, to give the baby his bath, to wash his clothes, to iron his shirts, to cut the grass, to wash the windows, to read the book, to write the letter, to translate the article, to do the sums, to clean the bath, to defrost the fridge.

**Ex. 30. Say that Mike offered to help you.**

Model: to repair my washing machine → Mike repaired my washing machine. – He offered **to repair** my washing machine too, but I refused.

*Prompts:* to lend me £10, to find me a job, to type my essay, to help me with my grammar, to carry my luggage, to get me a seat, to give me a lift, to show me the way, to look after my dog, to meet my train, to drive me home, to paint my apartment, to repair my car.

**Ex. 31. Make dialogues by analogy.**

Model: to lock the safe → Did you remember to lock the safe? – Oh, no! I completely forgot **to lock** the safe! I'll lock the safe! I'll lock it right away.

*Prompts:* to turn off the oven, to turn out the lights, to switch off the TV, to shut the lift doors, to wash the coffee cups, to make coffee, to put on your raincoat, to take your umbrella, to take off your boots, to sweep the floor, to dust the desks, to buy biscuits, to feed the tropical fish, to write down your homework.

**Ex. 32. Use the infinitive as object.**

1. The children were anxious ... 2. We were not afraid ... 3. I pretended not ... 4. They have not decided whether ... or not. 5. The boys agreed never ... 6. Do you care ... ? 7. I was very careful not ... 8. I wish we had not forgotten ... 9. They thought ... 10. He proposed ... 11. When did you learn ... ? 12. I'll try to remember ... 13. The tourists were lucky ... 14. The father promised ... 15. They offer ... 16. He attempted ... 17. We are sorry ... 18. The boy asked ...

**Ex. 33. Make sentences. Use the infinitives as attributes.**

Model A: We have no time **to wait** for him.

Model B: He is not a man **to rely** on.

Model C: She had nobody **to help** her.

*Prompts:* to say a kind word to her, to examine the room, to listen to the news, to give her a piece of advice, to support her, to solve the problem, to lose, to persuade, to admit his fault, to stay here any longer, to discuss it, to calm her, to offer her help, to be elected chairman, to be appointed manager, to watch the play to the end, to go there alone, to visit such places.

**Ex. 34. Say who was the first (the last) to do it.**

Model A: to arrive → Tom was the first (the last) to arrive.

Model B: to be invited → Ann was the first (the last) to be invited.

*Prompts:* to complete his work, to finish the composition, to be operated on, to be examined, to offer his help, to notice them, to hear the noise, to be praised, to be told the news, to understand the problem, to learn the poem by heart, to leave the room, to refuse the invitation, to find the right answer.

**Ex. 35. Insert the infinitives given in brackets. Use prepositions if necessary.**

1. I have a lot of things ... and many problems ... (to think, to consider). 2. How many classes have you got ... this week? (to attend). 3. There were usually hundreds of matters, big and small, ... (to attend). 4. He would never fail to find something ... even if there was little or nothing ... (to say, to speak). 5. She always came with some little story ... looking for somebody ... it (to tell). 6. Tell the child matches are a dangerous thing ... (to play). 7. There are two more games ..., and the tournament will be over (to play). 8. Mr. Snodgrass was the first ... the astonished silence (to break). 9. The first patient ... was a small boy in his early 'teens (to examine). 10. Safety is the first principle ... in shooting competitions (to observe). 11. He complained that he was always the last ... (to inform). 12. I am the last man ... a question of the kind (to ask). 13. Among the last ..., they attracted the attention of the entire gathering (to arrive). 14. He found that he was the only one ... the discrepancy (to notice). 15. If there is to be a vacancy I would like to be the one ... the job (to offer). 16. These houses were among the few ..., after a great fire (to survive).

**Ex. 36. Paraphrase the following so as to use the infinitive as attribute.**

I 1. There was nothing that might keep him at home that night, and he gladly accepted the invitation. 2. He is not the man who would shirk his duty. 3. This is a mineral that can be found only in this part of the country. 4. There are so many letters that must be answered. 5. I have so many letters that must be answered. 6. She had no one in whom she could confide. 7. Can you entrust the work to anyone? 8. Here is the list of medicines, which are not to be sold without a prescription. 9. We could not spare a moment. 10. Can anything be done in order to prevent such accidents.

II 1. The parcels are all sorted out. Here are the ones that will go by air. 2. The questions that are going to be submitted for discussion must be circulated two days before the opening session. 3. The ship with the pictures, which will be displayed at the international exhibition, has arrived. 4. The delegates to the scientific conference, which will be held on the 19<sup>th</sup> of July, have to register with the organizing committee. 5. The library has received a prospectus of the books, which will be published this year. 6. We must have five more reports printed.

**Ex. 37. Make up sentences, using the following phrases with attributive infinitives.**

a lot to do, no time to lose, a passage to translate, a man to trust, a rule to remember, the work to do, the distance to cover, a chance not to be missed, a nice town to live in, an easy person to deal with, nobody to speak to, nothing to trouble about, mistakes to be corrected, nobody to rely on, nothing to be afraid of, a poem to learn, the first to break the silence, the last to hand in the test.

**Ex. 38. Answer the questions. Use the infinitive given in brackets as adverbial modifiers of purpose.**

1. Why did you stop at the drug store on your way home from school? (to buy a piece of soap) 2. Why did Sally touch your shoulder? (to get my attention) 3. Why did Mike look in his dictionary? (to find the correct spelling of a word) 4. Why do you listen to the records every day? (to improve my pronunciation) 5. Why did Sally take an aspirin? (to get rid of her headache) 6. Why did you have to run to the bus stop? (to get to class on time) 7. Why did you stay after class? (to ask the teacher a question) 8. Why did you write a letter to your aunt? (to ask her for some money) 9. Why did you turn on the radio? (to listen to the news) 10. Why did you call on Betsy? (to invite her to my party) 11. Why were you standing in the doorway of the store? (to get out of the rain while I was waiting for the bus) 12. Why do we wear coats in winter? (to keep warm) 13. Why do you take long walks? (to relax)

**Ex. 39. Ask your friend why he went there.**

Model: to go to the hospital (to visit a friend) → Why did you go to the hospital? – I went to the hospital (in order) **to visit** a friend.

*Prompts:* to the post office (to mail a letter), to the drug store (to buy some shampoo), to the cafeteria (to eat some lunch), downtown (to do shopping), to the dentist's office (to make an appointment), to the library (to study for a test), to the launderette (to wash my clothes), to the baker's (to buy a loaf of bread), to Moscow (to visit my aunt and uncle).

**Ex. 40. Make dialogues by analogy.**

Model: to talk about traffic accidents (to frighten Mary) –  
– You mustn't talk about traffic accidents. It frightens Mary.  
– All right. I won't talk about traffic accidents so as not **to frighten** Mary.

*Prompts:* to make a noise at night (to wake Jane), to mention illness (to distress Carry), to chew gum at the lesson (to disgust other students), to

sing in your bath (to annoy your mother), to whistle in the room (to irritate your father), to criticize lady drivers (to offend them), to play the radio loudly (to disturb Betsy), to tell dirty jokes (to shock Mary), to bang doors (to startle Irene), to smoke at meals (to upset Ruth), to come in late (to bother your brother), to leave your bicycle in the corridor (to inconvenience your neighbours), to talk at the lesson (to annoy your teacher).

**Ex. 41. Say why Bill couldn't do it. Use infinitives as adverbial modifiers of result.**

Model: tired (to finish his homework) → Bill was too tired **to finish** his homework.

*Prompts:* sleepy (to read the article to the end), busy (to help us), irritated (to speak calmly), angry with you (to invite you to the party), lazy (to look up the words in a dictionary), proud (to admit his mistake), fat (to get through the window), impatient (to wait for your answer quietly), weak (to walk upstairs), stupid (to understand what you meant), cautious (to lend Dick money), polite (to say that it was your fault).

**Ex. 42. Say why they could do it.**

Model: Peter got through the window (thin) → Peter was thin enough **to get** through the window.

*Prompts:* Tom went alone to school (old), Ann waited quietly (patient), Mary walked upstairs (strong), Peter ate something (well), James bought the house (rich), Frank understood what you meant (clever), Bill rode the pony (light), Sally wore your fur coat (tall), Jack became a jockey (small), Mary applied again (optimistic), Tom admitted his mistake (honest), Sam lent Bill money (rash), James sympathized with the younger generation (broad-minded), Roger said that it was your fault (impolite).

**Ex. 43. Ask another student if he did it.**

Model: to eat the apple (sweet, sour) → Did you eat the apple? – Yes, the apple was sweet enough (for me) **to eat**. or: No, the apple was too sour (for me) **to eat**.

*Prompts:* to carry the case (light, heavy), to push the packet under the door (thin, thick), to read the inscription (clear, faint), to see the bird's nest quite clearly (low, high), to put your umbrella in your suitcase (short, long), to jump across the stream (narrow, wide), to pick the fruit (ripe, unripe), to use yesterday's milk (fresh, sour), to drink the coffee (cool, hot), to wear your suit (smart, shabby), to sleep in the cave (dry, wet), to walk on the ice (thick, thin).

**Ex. 44. Point out infinitives of result and translate the sentences into Latvian.**

1. I intended to use the opportunity, it was too good to be missed. 2. When I left the Post Office I found that I was too late to catch the London train. 3. It was getting too hot to work and we decided to have a break. 4. Dixon was clever enough to avoid talking on this subject with Welch. 5. Michael considered Johnny to be too young to be drawn into their religious community. 6. She was woman enough not to forget to powder her nose even at that critical moment. 7. His case is such as not to be helped. 8. He turned to Margaret to find her in conversation with Carol Goldsmith. 9. He heard a loud knock at the front door and opened it to see a stranger in a shabby raincoat. 10. She liked to be kind to people and used to give promises to forget them at once. 11. He went quickly to the bathroom, and returned to find Murphy sitting beside his bed. 12. I wish I were strong enough to help you, my boy.

**Ex. 45. Paraphrase the following sentences so as to use infinitives of result.**

Models: 1. The storm was so strong that I couldn't go out.

The storm was too strong (for me) to go out.

2. The text is so short that it can be translated in an hour.

The text is short enough to be translated in an hour.

1. It was so dark that he could see nothing before him. 2. You are so experienced, you ought to know better. 3. She was so excited that she couldn't utter a word. 4. He was so angry, he wouldn't speak to me. 5. His English vocabulary is very poor; he can't make himself understood. 6. She knows English so well that she read Somerset Maugham in the original. 7. Mr. Burton was so cruel that he could send a man to death. 8. The story 'A friend in Need' is so tragic it can't be merely ironical. 9. The man was so down and out that he could not get a decent job. 10. The man was not very strong and so was unable to swim the distance. It was very late, nobody could save him.

## **Predicative Constructions with the Infinitive**

**Ex. 1. Point out objective predicative constructions with the infinitive in the following sentences. Translate them into Latvian.**

1. Next day, though I pressed him to remain, Stroeve left me. 2. I never heard him speak of those whose work had a certain analogy with his own. 3. Rusty was so busy he didn't notice her coming in. 4. I am not at all sure that in her own interests I shan't require her to return to me. 5. I tried to

induce your father to give him the authority he desired. 6. ... he was good at court games, had a number of big game fishing records and had just shown himself to be a coward. 7. Your wife says that nothing you can do will ever induce her to divorce you. 8. She was known very soon to be the perfect parlour-maid. 9. I didn't mean you to hear, or that old person. 10. Short of actually beating his wife, he perceived nothing to be done. 11. Soames, glanced at her beneath his eyelids, nodded, and he saw Irene steal at him one of her unfathomable looks. 12. So I think I'd like you to know that it's just well to be prepared, so that if she did go suddenly it wouldn't be any shock to you. 13. ... as we walked out into the snowy yard we saw the tail light of a car turn the corner at the end of the black alley. 14. She wanted him to see Ede with the other children – to see how dignified and polite she was. 15. Paul watched him destroy the sheet. 16. You could hardly have expected me to go to the garage.

**Ex. 2. Insert the particle *to* in objective predicative constructions with the infinitive where necessary.**

1. The room made him ... feel embarrassed. 2. They want me ... run out. 3. When I heard him ... go downstairs I went down after him. 4. She could not bring herself ... tell him about Vesta. 5. Paul felt his heart ... melt. 6. Suddenly he saw her ... rise and ... turn away. 7. At first he had believed them ... be married. 8. The colonel ordered everyone ... wear a gas mask. 9. My feelings as a father and a husband compel me ... ask you yet again whether you will not reconsider your decision. 10. I forced him ... eat, and after luncheon I induced him ... lie down, but he couldn't sleep. 11. I told the driver ... take me to the hospital fast. 12. I never knew him ... stand and ... look at that beautiful, calm face. 13. She let her eyes ... rest on Jan's scarcely touched tray. 14. She made George ... acknowledge that it was no use to throw away all the beautiful things. 15. And, returning with the packet in her hand, she suddenly observed Richard ... emerge from the drawing room. 16. Did you see Miss Perbmarch ... enter or ... leave the house? 17. ... middle age and pressure of business forced him ... give up hunting. 18. She persuaded him ... see a doctor.

**Ex. 3. Form objective predicative constructions with the infinitive out of the elements in brackets.**

1. I don't wish (you, to understand) me. 2. When he came in he wanted to call you, but I persuaded (he, to wait) until morning. 3. I cannot allow (you, to throw) away an enormous property like this. 4. Soames must have been pressing (she, to go) back to him again, with public opinion and the law on his side, too! 5. Then she turned to the window and asked (me, to open) it. 6. Now, can I trouble (you, to come) in here? 7. I saw (my mother, to



pause) and (to put) her hand to her forehead. 8. He controlled himself, and clenching his teeth, set (oneself, to read). 9. She laughed and I heard (she, to strike) a match. 10. Old Jolyon watching from his corner saw (his brother's face, to change). 11. Maybe I could get (he, to pay) her seventy-five a week. 12. He was well set up too, a good figure, blemished only by an accident at football, which caused (he, to turn) in his right foot slightly when he walked. 13. The daughter turned uneasily not because it irritated her to work, but because she hated (people, to guess) at the poverty that made it necessary. 14. He flushed indignantly but forced (oneself, to answer) ... . 15. He could trust his cook to send in a meal that his guests would take pleasure in eating and desired (his parlour-maid, to wait) with neatness and dispatch. 16. I felt they expected (I, to say) clever things, and I never could think of any till after the party was over. 17. It was a serene, quiet, satisfied smile – and again Renisent felt (a tide of revolt, to rise) in her. 18. That at all events she understood, and then she heard (he, to bolt) the door. 19. From now on I'll have (you, to know) this is my business. 20. That's the way I meant (it, to be).

**Ex. 4. Recast the following sentences so as to use objective predicative constructions with the infinitive.**

1. I still consider we were right to resist them. 2. They required that I should arrive at 8 a.m. 3. The judge ordered that the prisoner should be remanded. 4. I believe they are very good in physics and other pure sciences ... . 5. He ... did what he could, though considered he got little thanks for it from his wife and five kids. 6. And she saw that the lower part of her face was twisted out of shape. 7. He gazed across at Grace ... watching her as she dealt with the marmalade cheerfully and happily. 8. He felt that she was unreasonable and unjust. 9. He knew he was a bad leader. 10. I think his father is one of the heads in Universal Stores. 11. He thought I was just a kid to be ordered. 12. I don't expect you'll think of me. 13. I think both of you are too simple to be dishonest.

**Ex. 5. Complete the following so as to use objective predicative constructions with the infinitive.**

1. She saw two of the girls ... . 2. I have never heard ... . 3. She felt the wind ... . 4. Andrew Manson considered his work ... . 5. They had no money, no experience, nothing but a desire to make a dream ... . 6. He watched and suddenly he saw her ... . 7. He liked to see people ... . 8. Well, I let them ... . 9. The window was open, and he could hear somebody ... . 10. She was asleep when we returned from the market, but at once got up when she heard us ... . 11. Will you come over and watch me ... . 12. You will then allow me ... . 13. I say that certain things are to be done, but I don't

order anybody ... . 14. He was right, but something warned me ... . 15. Obviously, he was not so strong as she had thought him ... . 16. I am sorry but my experience compel me ... . 17. She had been almost afraid to ask him and when she forced herself ... . 18. When you get this, I won't be here and I want you not ... . 19. There was a shock and he felt himself ... .

**Ex. 6. Point out subjective predicative constructions with the infinitive in the following sentences. Translate the sentences into Latvian.**

1. But I don't happen to know anything. 2. The tomb appeared to be that of the king. 3. You would never be likely to fall in love with me. 4. It doesn't seem to do her any harm, that's the cheeriest thing about it. 5. We are working now and we'll be sure to pay you Saturday. 6. I was not sure how a reporter was supposed to behave on occasions like this. 7. Blanch Stroeve loved working about the studio she happened to be living in and took pride in keeping it in apple-pie order. 8. It's thrilling to watch the blossoming of a young girl, particularly when she happens to be one's daughter. 9. He thinks she's stenographer but she turns out to be a writer. 10. She would be sure to throw her arms round his neck and say, 'Oh, Jo, how I make you suffer!' 11. A motor containing two foreigners is quite likely to have been noticed. 12. ... the pot was raised higher and higher and its contents appeared to be getting less and less. 13. We have not been required to undertake any work. 14. I don't happen to see any difference between them. 15. That is supposed to be a rose. 16. 'I'm not going to stand it', he is declared to have said. 17. He seemed to be turning it over in his mind. 18. Old Thomas, the groom, had been taken with jaundice and Andrew was compelled to make his rounds on foot. 19. The changes are likely to be announced in the April Budget. 20. Recent attack of typhoid, from which he was thought to be recovering, proves fatal. 21. The old man seemed to have lived a life on the roads. 22. The picture is supposed to be the passage of the Red Sea. 23. Kilimanjaro is a snow covered mountain and is said to be the highest mountain in Africa. 24. The company was reported to be paying starvation wages to its black workers. 25. Yet now few will be found to deny his greatness. 26. He was known to have refused office in the interests of his profession. 27. He was compelled to write his weekly review. 28. At the end of ten minutes he appeared to have solved his troubles with the machine. 29. ... he was known to be one of the best shots in England. 30. The two have been observed to meet daily during the past week in Richmond Park. 31. He was forced to give up work last December because of chronic arthritis. 32. I am thought to have so much influence in the getting of offices. 33. Saddle, as you know, did turn to be a star. 34. Some members of the action committee are believed to have spoken yesterday.

**Ex. 7. Recast the following sentences so as to use subjective predicative constructions with the infinitive.**

1. It seems that he is not in the habit of coming in time.
2. They say that he is honest.
3. A group of people at the gangway saw that the boat came into harbour.
4. It appeared that he had done it well.
5. It was not likely that he was going to be drawn into an argument.
6. The man had read his papers, it seemed.
7. It is very unlikely they would allow her to see visitors at this time of night.
8. It was felt that she was perfectly capable of taking care of herself.
9. It is believed that his advice was ignored.
10. It appeared that Betty was delighted.
11. It is pretty unlikely that they would approve of it.
12. It appears that they have some difficulties with the car.

**Ex. 8. Paraphrase the following using subjective predicative constructions with the infinitive.**

Model: He was taken aback (to seem). He seemed to be taken aback.

1. She is busy today (to seem).
2. The situation has changed a lot (to appear).
3. The Crimea was visited by numerous hikers last summer (to know).
4. He didn't have any money with him (to happen).
5. This path is used quite often nowadays (to appear).
6. Nobody knew the way, so I had to return (to happen).
7. His plan is rather unrealistic (to appear).
8. She wasn't properly dressed (to happen).
9. Amy Driffield would never speak to me again (unlikely).
10. He was in high spirits when he got out of the train (to seem).
11. He lived with an uncle and aunt on the outskirts of a little Kentish town by the sea (to be known).
12. He got a scholarship to Wadham.
13. We filled in Driffield's study; it was a large room on the other side of the house (to appear).

**Ex. 9. Complete the following so as to use subjective predicative constructions with the infinitive.**

1. The girl seems ...
2. The weather appears ...
3. You are supposed ...
4. Our friends are sure ...
5. It is wonderful how everything seems ...
6. He said somebody was supposed ...
7. Everything that morning seemed ...
8. Several thousand people are expected ...
9. Your home during the last few years seems ...
10. I will not deny that several times I was tempted ...
11. None will accompany me, and I am forced ...
12. It's hard for us to understand how such a thing is permitted ...
13. As a result, when they were told ... , they did it.
14. She was sure that he should be made ...
15. I admit he seemed ...
16. What time are you supposed ... ?
17. The train was seen ...
18. This was supposed ...
19. They might be made ...

**Ex. 10. Define the function of the for-to-infinitive construction.**

1. Theodora Goodman sat in the hall near the reception desk and waited for somebody to come. 2. My friend motioned for him to come in. 3. Well, seventy was the outside limit, it was then time, George said, for them to go and leave their money to their children. 4. ... in their shrill laughter he found a terrible dissonance that made him pray for the twilight to come. 5. 'You should ask your Violet Adams to Merve', said mother, waiting for father to bring round the horses. 6. 'It's not for me to disagree there', said Jolyon, 'but that's all quite beside the mark'. 7. She waited for Violet to say something. 8. 'When will you marry me?' 'Are you ready for me to marry you?' 9. ... it was good experience for me to see it to its completed form. 10. 'This question of company', he said, 'is something for me to decide'. 11. The lady was speaking too fast for me to catch what she said. 12. It would not be possible for a human and intelligent person to invent a rational excuse for slavery. 13. They told him to be a good boy and wait for them to come home in the evening. 14. It was instinctive now for him to take her into his confidence. 15. Theodora sat down. Confident her intuition would identify, she waited for Lieselotte to appear. 16. ... they thought it was better for me to live in a place like this.

**Ex. 11. Form for-to-infinitive constructions using the words in brackets in the appropriate form.**

1. Although it was a busy section, it would be hard for (I, to name) the business that comprised its activity. 2. I am going to ring the bell for (the visitors, to go). 3. ... it's a bit technical here and there for (I, to follow). 4. My friend motioned for (he, to come) in. 5. It is not necessary for (I, to explain) that we are twins. 6. Waiting for (the hymn, to stop) she watched the fight blaze. 7. Theodora waited for (she, to go). 8. It was easy enough for (the drivers, to get) in that way. 9. It is so unusual for (a man, to bring) home a thing like this. 10. It's no easy thing for (I, to get hold) of it. 11. He didn't answer and I waited for some time for (he, to speak). 12. She waited for (some act) that still had (to perform). 13. Often enough Theodora wondered whether it was time for (she, to go). 14. Now I longed for (they, to return) to me. 15. Theodora looked for (some other object, to concentrate). 16. It would be fine for (her folks, to have her back home) after so much travelling around. 17. He listened to her with what looked like polite interest, putting in now and then a remark in a voice too low for (I, to catch).

**Ex. 12. Respond to the following questions using for-to-infinitive constructions.**

Model: Whom is she waiting for? → She is waiting for her daughter to come from school.

1. Why is it necessary for her to translate this article? 2. What is it for her to decide? 3. Why is it good experience for me to read books in the original? 4. Who told him to wait for them to return? 5. What do you think will be more sensible for him to do? 6. Why are you sure it'll be better for you to live in the country this summer? 7. What does she seem to be waiting for? 8. Why is it impossible for me to join them? 9. What have you arranged for her to do? 10. Wouldn't it be better for us to learn more about each other? 11. Why was it difficult for you to persuade him to come to see us? 12. When is it time for me to ring the bell? 13. Why was it not easy for the drivers to ride the cars that day? 14. Why does she long for them to return home? 15. Would it be easy for you to go there?

**Ex. 13. Complete the following so as to use for-to-infinitive constructions.**

1. The best thing for you ... 2. I am very anxious for ... 3. I have arranged for ... 4. It took a moment for ... 5. It would be much easier for ... 6. She was sitting and waiting for somebody ... 7. It's not for her ... 8. It was bad experience for me ... 9. It's something for her ... 10. It would be more sensible for ... 11. It would be better for ... 12. There will be many interesting people for you ... 13. It would be possible for ... 14. She has arranged everything for ... 15. It took ten minutes for ... 16. It is a joy for him ... 17. It would be hard for her ... 18. It was easy enough for ... 19. It is unusual for a person ... 20. It's time for me ...

**Ex. 14. Paraphrase, using *for-phrases* with infinitives.**

1. She held out the telegram so that I might see it. 2. It's quite natural that you should think so. 3. The first thing he must do is to ring them up. 4. Let us wait till they settle this matter. 5. This is a problem you should solve all by yourself. 6. I shall bring you the article that you may read. 7. I gave an umbrella to the children lest they should get wet through. 8. I've put on weight. I can't wear this dress any longer. 9. It is unbelievable that a man should go so far beyond his limit. 10. He spoke loudly so that everyone might hear him. 11. There is nothing that I may add. 12. It is very unusual that he should have said such a thing. 13. It's high time you knew Grammar well. 14. This is a boy you can play with.

**Ex. 15. Make up sentences, using the following infinitive phrases parenthetically.**

To be quite frank; to tell the truth; to make a long story short; to put it more plainly; to be sure; to put it mildly; to crown all; to be more precise; to say nothing of ...; to make things worse; to cut a long story short; to say the least of it; to begin with; to judge by her appearance.

## Revision Exercises

### Ex. 1. State the form of the infinitive.

1. They could hardly have been hidden on board. 2. I found that he didn't seem to be taking in what I was saying. 3. I don't want to seem always to be criticizing your methods. 4. I tried to imagine what had happened to drive the poor creature to that step. 5. The most elderly member of the party threw up his arms in what appeared to be a defensive gesture. 6. Soames was reserved about his affairs, but he must be getting a very warm man. 7. 'Well, I must be going', he said after a short pause. 8. It is most unlikely I must have made a mistake. 9. 'There is something to be done, but what,' she said. 10. Even though he never seemed to have nickel to his name, he managed better than the others. 11. He had brought his way through to knowing – what peoples' motives are and what means they are likely to resort to in order to attain their goals. 12. I should have liked to say something final but I could not think of anything, I just said that I must be getting along and with a curt nod left him. 13. She has written over thirty novels and her works are beginning to be adapted for television and film. 14. You seem to have had a rotten time in Paris. 15. She was supposed to be a nice girl. 16. It had been put there to be washed. 17. I didn't expect my novel to sell more than twenty thousand copies.

### Ex. 2. Define the function of the infinitive.

1. I do not think it is necessary to insult Miss Elsa Hard's intelligence by telling her. 2. He made a supreme effort to break it. 3. To say that I had not resented this foul deed, which seemed to me deserving the title of the crime of the century, would be paltering the truth. 4. He wished to give her every chance. 5. To tell it is to live through it all again. 6. Hers was not a face to command instant attention or recognition. 7. To have taken the field openly against his arrival, would have been madness. 8. I'm not running a cafeteria here you know, whatever some people seem to think. 9. You're supposed to play without ceasing. 10. She had seen two men start towards her from opposite sides. 11. But though danger had been there for some time it was never likely to get acute. 12. You're all supposed to be intelligent. 13. The big problems of life seemed to solve themselves. 14. He hadn't expected Strickland to take him up on the sport and make his preparations to go there and then. 15. He took time to get his cigarette lighted. 16. I saw him take forcible possession of her hand. 17. The boys downstairs were supposed to wait until we gave it to them.

### Ex. 3. Point out and define the type of infinitive constructions in the following sentences.

1. I just don't seem to care about it any more. 2. Then, as he turned up the street that led to the residence district, Judy began to cry quietly to herself. He had never seen her cry before. 3. 'Do you expect me never to go anywhere?' Jonquil demanded, leaning back against the sofa-pillows until she seemed to look at him from many miles away. 4. He was forced several times to sit down on a bench, when crossing the park. 5. It's wonderful how everything seems to turn out right for me. 6. A young man was reported to be ... completely under the thumb of his mother. 7. I watched the engine come nearer. 8. The lady turned out to be nice, and the chrysanthemums were enormous and extraordinary beautiful. 9. I feel therefore, that the time has come for me to set down all I know of the affair in black and white. 10. It was the first time I had ever heard her laugh. 11. Mr. Renauld declared that he was not likely to use the car. 12. The question of our agreeing or not agreeing to her plan did not seem to occur to her mind. 13. A young Minnesotan who seemed to have had nothing to do with his generation did a heroic thing. 14. Is that a likely thing to happen? 15. They appeared to be wealthy people with a passion for everything connected with the stage. 16. When the time had come for him to wear good clothes, he had known who were the best tailors in America. 17. Bosinney didn't seem to hear. 18. But best of all, take them along and they you're sure to be on the safe side.

**Ex. 4. Insert the particle *to* where required.**

1. You would hardly ... believe it. 2. The inspector very kindly allowed me ... accompany him to the Three Anchors. 3. He'd better not ... let me ... catch sight of him. 4. I can't ... tell you how I hate it when I go out and I can't ... give satisfaction, so ... speak. 5. I didn't see anyone, but I did hear the front-door bell ... ring once or twice. 6. My friend motioned for him ... come in. 7. 'You should better ... shut up the shop', she said. 8. I better ... go in first. I mean we wouldn't want ... come in. 9. I want you ... go away because I have let myself ... get fond of you. 10. But after all, that's life, and Jeremy had better ... find it out. 11. Andrew dared not ... meet his wife's eyes. 12. 'You shouldn't have let him ... get away with that', she said. 13. She has made him ... play first fiddle to that woman. 14. What did I expect ... happen? 15. Only Mr. Pellet was supposed ... fill in the initials, because he liked ... be sure where everybody was. 16. She seemed ... be making very lame excuses and James did not look at her. 17. Pat caught Leam's eye but Leam happened ... look away at the moment. 18. I watched the shore ... come closer.

**Ex. 5. Complete the following so as to use predicative constructions with the infinitive.**

1. He appeared ... . 2. Do you expect me ... . 3. The teacher brought the article for ... . 4. The translation proved too difficult for ... . 5. When she

went out with me she was supposed ... . 6. 'I absolutely agree', he was heard ... . 7. It wasn't the sort of place he was likely ... . 8. Have you got anything for me ... ? 9. His novels happen ... . 10. But a few moments later there was something for her ... . 11. I'm sure you don't want him ... . 12. He sat down quietly and allowed ... . 13. I shall never forget the tactful patience, with which he persuaded her ... . 14. When we came back I made her ... . 15. He would not permit me ... . 16. Many highly trained workers are expected ... . 17. No one must be allowed ... . 18. There was a dinner later and she was compelled ... .

## Test Yourself

**Choose the appropriate form of the infinitive.**

1. It is easy ... by his lies.
  - a) to have fooled
  - b) to be fooled
  - c) to fool
2. Living in a foreign country has been a good experience for me. I am very pleased ... the opportunity to learn about another culture.
  - a) to give
  - b) to be giving
  - c) to have been given
3. They claimed ... the problem.
  - a) to have solved
  - b) to be solved
  - c) to solve
4. The rain seemed ... .
  - a) to stop
  - b) to be stopped
  - c) to have stopped
5. I made my brother ... my suitcase.
  - a) to carry
  - b) carry
  - c) to be carried
6. I went to the store ... some bread.
  - a) to have bought
  - b) buy
  - c) to buy
7. I was surprised ... Tim at the party.
  - a) see
  - b) to have seen
  - c) to see



8. I want you ... the truth.  
 a) to know  
 b) know  
 c) to have known
9. He is known ... a great book-lover.  
 a) be  
 b) to be  
 c) to have been
10. The treaty is expected ... soon.  
 a) to be signed  
 b) to have signed  
 c) to sign

**Key:**

1. b; 2. c; 3. a; 4. c; 5. b; 6. c; 7. c; 8. a; 9. b; 10. a.

## Translation Exercises

**Ex. 1. Translate into English.**

1. Priecājos, ka iedevu jums šo grāmatu. 2. Priecājos, ka man iedeva šo grāmatu. 3. Priecājamies, ka satikām viņu stacijā. 4. Piecājamies, ka mūs satika stacijā. 5. Es nebiju domājis pārtraukt viņu. 6. Es nebiju domājis, ka mani pārtrauks. 7. Man nečrti, ka es jums esmu sagādājis tik daudz rūpju. 8. Viņš būs priecīgs jūs sastapt. 9. Viņš bija priecīgs, ka sastapa jūs. 10. Viņš nevar ciest, ja par viņu smejas. 11. Bērniem patīk, kad viņiem stāsta pasakas. 12. Es atceršos, ka jau biju kaut kur šo cilvēku sastapis.

**Ex. 2.**

**A. Use the infinitive as subject:**

**1) in the construction with the introductory *it*.**

1. Viņai lielu prieku sagādāja skalīties, kā rotaiņas bērni. 2. Droši vien, karstā dienā ļoti patīkami padzerties no šī avota. 3. Jums nenāks par ļaunu, ja sāksiet nodarboties ar sportu. 4. Mums nācās patērēt nemazums laika, lai pārliecinātu viņu, ka viņam nav taisnība. 5. Nosnaušties savā atzveltnes krēsļā pēc pusdienām bija viņa sens ieradums. 6. Būtu jauki rīt izbraukt ārā no pilsētas. Būtu patīkami paslīpot mežā un papīkoties.

**2) without the introductory *it*.**

1. Pateikt viņam taisnību šajā grūtajā brīdī nozīmētu atņemt viņam pārdzīvēs cerības. 2. Zināt valodu ļabi nozīmē apgūt pilnībā visus tās aspektus. 3. Viņš nebrīdināt par šo lietu būtu negodīgi. 4. Šī uzdevuma veikšanai nepieciešama liela viriņība.

### **B. Use the infinitive as predicative:**

1. Viss, ko viņai izdevās izdarīt, bija uzzināt viņu telefona numuru. 2. Tagad mums atliek tikai izsaukt taksi. 3. Telefona izmantošana uzzīdību iegūšanai nozīmē laika taupīšanu. 4. Vienīgais, ko viņi vēlējās, bija atrast vietu, kur varētu palikt pa nakti.

### **C. Use the infinitive as object:**

1. Es izlikos, ka nemanu viņa samulsumu, un turpināju runāt. 2. Viņi nolēma to vairs nekad nepieminēt. 3. Es jutos sarūgtināts, ka nebiju pateicies viņam. 4. Viņi piedāvāja izmitināt tūristus savā mājā. 5. Kur jūs iemācījāties tik labi runāt angļiski? 6. Es pacentīšos neaizmirst nosūtīt viņiem telegrammu. 7. Klaidis priecājās iepazīties ar Sondras draugiem. 8. Nīks bija laimīgs, jo viņam iedeva jaunu darbu. 9. Viņa nopļoja, ka nebija uzlūgusi pie sevis Džonu agrāk. 10. Stīvenam ļoti nepatika, kad viņam atgādina par vecāku nabadzību.

### **D. Use the infinitive as attribute:**

1. Ēim faktam jāpievērš īpaša uzmanība. 2. Lūk cilvēks, ar kuru var parunāt par šo jautājumu. 3. Viņa vienmēr atrod par ko pasmieties. 4. Vairs nebija par ko uztraukties. Slimnieks jutās daudz labāk. 5. Lūk raksts, kuru jāizlasa. 6. Piecstāvu nams, kuru jāuzceļ mūsu ielā, domāts trūcīgajiem pilsētas iedzīvotājiem. 7. Mūsu projektu apspriedīs sapulcē, kura notiks rīt. 8. Viņam nebija ko teikt sev par attaisnojumu. 9. Viņi ir sarežģīti cilvēki; ar viņu grūti atrast kopīgu valodu. 10. Jūs esat tieši tas cilvēks, kuram mums var palīdzēt šajā smagajā situācijā. 11. Kas finišēja otrais? 12. Ēonedzī es esmu ļoti aizņemts; man daudz darba. 13. Viņi nebija no tiem, kurus var viegli iebaidīt. 14. Viņa zināja, ka nav ne pie kā vainīga, viņai nekā nebija jābaidās.

### **E. Use the infinitive as adverbial modifier:**

#### **1) of purpose.**

1. Viss bija izdarīts, lai viņu glābtu. 2. Viņi izsauca taksi, lai aizvestu mūs uz staciju. 3. Es piecēlos pulkst. 6, lai nenokavētu rīta vilcienu. 4. Es uzrakstīju viņam vēstuli, lai atgādinātu viņam par solījumu. 5. Vai jūs ieradāties, lai piedalītos konferencē? 6. Viņi nodeva rokkrastu izdevniecībā rediģēšanai.

#### **2) of result.**

1. Bērns vēl pārāk mazs, lai saprastu jūsu jokus. 2. Ēi grāmata pārāk bieza, lai to izlasītu vienas dienas laikā. 3. Viņi bija tik ļoti pārsteigti, ka nevarēja izteikt ne vārda. 4. Nakts bija tik tumša, ka nevarēja neko saredzēt. 5. Viņi nepazīst viņu pietiekami labi, lai uzticētu viņam tik atbildīgu lietu. 6. Jautājums bija pārāk nopietns, lai to izlemtu tādā steigā. 7. Vētra bija tik spēcīga, ka novāra daudzām mājām jumtus.

### **Ex. 3. Use predicative constructions with the infinitive.**

1. Runā, ka viņi dzīvo Kanādā. 2. Uzskatīja, ka viņa brīnīdīgi spēlēja tenisu. 3. Bija zināms, ka viņi piedalījās šajā ekspedīcijā. 4. Šo jautājumu var uzskatīt

par izlemtu. 5. Diez' vai spēle beigsies neizdīrti. 6. Viņa izrādījās laba patsniedzēja. 7. Jums noteikti patiks šī izrāde. 8. Izskatās, ka viņa ir piedzīmējusi viņa priekšlikumu. 9. Izrādījās, ka vakars bija pagājis veiksmīgi. 10. Iespējams jums kādu brīdi būs jāpagaida. 11. Runā, ka viņa vecākā māsa jau trīs gadus nodarbojas ar gleznošanu. 12. Šī iet, es pazīstu šo cilvēku. 13. Zināms, ka pirmās Olimpiskās spēles notika 1896. gadā, Atēnās. 14. Mēs redzējām, ka studenti sarunājās ar deķānu. 15. Viņa redzēja, ka viņš paņēma šo grāmatu. 15. Es negribu, lai jūs nāktu tik agri. 16. Vai jūs ievērojāt, ka viņa aizgāja? 17. Es domāju (sagaidu), ka viņa atgriezīsies ap pulkstens pieciem. 18. Viņš dzirdēja, ka meita ienāca istabā. 19. Vai jūs dzirdjāt, ka viņš runā angļiski? 20. Es negaidīju, ka viņi atgriezīsies tik ātri. 21. Viņa māte vēlas, lai dēls kļūtu ārsts. 22. Es nesaprotu, kas viņam lika atteikties no šī brauciena. 23. Viņa negaidīja, ka mēs piedalīsimies šajā konferencē. 24. Es ceru, ka tas jums tiks padomāt, kā atrast izeju no šīs situācijas. 25. Slimības dēļ viņa kavējusi daudz nodarbu. Taču mēs domājam, ka viņa drīz panāks grupu. 26. Visi uzskata viņu par gudru un darbīgu. 27. Mums patīk, kad viņš mums stāsta interesantus nostāstus par saviem ceļojumiem. 28. Šo māju, šī iet, uzcels nākošajā mēnesī. 29. Domā, ka sapulcē uzstāsies deķāns. 30. Diez' vai viņam to jautās. 31. Iespējams, viņa uzrakstīs viņam vēstuli. 31. Šis romāns, šī iet, tulkots no franču valodas. 32. Es dzirdēju, ka viņi strīdas blakus istabā, bet kad es tur iegāju, viņi apklusā. 33. Diez' vai viņi zina manu adresi. Viņi vienreiz bija ienākuši pie manis kopā ar manu brāli. Kas liek jums domāt, ka viņi zina manu adresi? 34. Zināms, ka kādreiz Britu salas bija Eiropas kontinenta daļa. 35. Jūs, droši vien, atnāksit pavadīt savu draugu uz staciju.

---

## THE PREPOSITION

---

### Prepositions of Place and Movement

**Ex. 1.** Complete these sentences. Use *in*, *at* or *on* with one of the words or phrases from the box.

bed	sea	the National Theatre	a farm	hospital
school	prison	the airport	the cinema	<i>the station</i>

1. My train arrives at 11.30. Can you meet me **at the station**? 2. I didn't feel very well when I woke up, so I stayed ... . 3. Are they showing any good films ... this week? 4. Many people are ... crimes that they did not commit. 5. I like the countryside and the fresh air. I think I'd like to work ... . 6. Did

you get on well with your teachers when you were ... . 7. We went to watch a play ... when we were in London. 8. Linda was injured in a road accident a few days ago. She is still ... . 9. It was a very long voyage. We were ... for ten weeks. 10. Our flight was delayed. We had to wait ... for four hours.

**Ex. 2. Complete these sentences with *in* or *at*.**

Model: Were these many people **at** the concert?

1. I didn't see you ... the party on Saturday. Where were you? 2. It was a very slow train. It stopped ... every little station. 3. He speaks quite good French. He studied ... Paris for a year. 4. Tom's ill. He wasn't ... work today. He was ... home ... bed. 5. The exhibition ... the art gallery finished on Saturday. 6. There will be a public meeting ... the Town Hall next week to discuss the plan to build a new road. 7. I haven't seen Ken for some time. I last saw him ... Dave's wedding. 8. Paul is a student ... London University. 9. Don't phone tomorrow evening. I won't be ... home. I'll be ... Ann's. 10. It's always too hot ... Ann's house. She has the heating on too high.

**Ex. 3. Complete these sentences with a preposition if a preposition is necessary.**

Model: What time did you arrive **at** the station?

1. After many years away, he arrived back ... England a month ago. 2. The train from London arrives ... platform 4. 3. What time do you expect to arrive ... London? 4. What time do you expect to arrive ... the hotel? 5. What time do you usually arrive ... home in the evening? 6. What time do you usually arrive ... work in the morning? 7. We arrived ... the town with nowhere to stay. 8. When we arrived ... the cinema, there was a long queue outside. 9. It's a strange feeling when you first arrive ... a foreign country. 10. I arrived ... home feeling very tired.

**Ex. 4. Complete these sentences, with *to*, *into*, *on* or *by*. If no preposition is necessary, leave the sentences as it is.**

Model: When are you going **to** Spain?

Tom usually goes **to** work **by** car.

1. I'm tired. I'm ... bed. 2. What time are you going ... home? 3. I decided not to go ... car. I went ... my bike instead. 4. We went ... a very good party last night. We didn't get ... home until 3 a.m. 5. I saw Jane this morning. She was ... a bus, which passed me. 6. Sorry, I'm late. I missed the bus, so I had to come ... foot. 7. The easiest way to get around London is ... Underground. 8. I must go ... the bank today to change some money. 9. I had lost my key but I managed to climb ... the house through a window. 10. Marcel

has just returned ... France after two years in England. 11. I didn't feel like walking, so I came home ... a taxi.

**Ex. 5. In this exercise you have to use *been to*. Write questions asking someone if they have been to these places.**

Model: (Australia) Have you been to Australia?

1. (London) Have ... ? 2. (Sweden) Have ... ? 3. (Ireland) Have ... ? 4. (Moscow) Have ... ? 5. (Rome) Have ... ? 6. (the United States) Have ... ?  
Now choose four of these places and say whether you have been to them. Answer in the way shown.

Model: (Australia) I've been to Australia once/twice/many times etc.  
Or: I've never been to Australia.

**Ex. 6. In this exercise you have to write sentences using *get into/out of/on/off*.**

Model: You were walking home. A friend passed you in his car. He saw you, stopped and offered you a lift. He opened the door. What did you do? **I got into the car.**

1. You were waiting for your bus. At last your bus arrived. The doors opened. What did you do then? I got ... . 2. You drove home in your car. You arrived at your house and parked the car. What did you do then? I ... . 3. You were travelling by train to Bristol. When the train arrived at Bristol, what did you do? ... . 4. You needed a taxi. After a few minutes a taxi stopped for you. You opened the door. What did you do then? ... . 5. You were riding your bike. There was a big hill and you didn't have the energy to cycle it up.. What did you do? ... and pushed it up the hill.

**Ex. 7. Insert prepositions *to, towards, in, into, up, to, for, along*.**

1. They had to work in the water, sometimes falling ... it ... their shoulders. 2. 'What did Soames want to go ... the country ... ?' 3. Walking ... the river we were picking flowers and talking, and it was only Henry who went ... it to bathe. 4. He heard a noise in the lane and went ... the fence but nobody was coming ... his garden. 5. He decided to go ... a village ... the north of London. 6. I was so weak that could not go ... the doctor; so my son set out ... him. 7. They dashed ... the tent as the rain was already over them. 8. He turned his collar ... the ears. 9. The rocket was launched ... the Moon, and it actually came ... it and circled it. 10. We went ... the lake ... a path across the meadow. 11. He led me ... a narrow corridor and then ... the verandah. 12. As it was very dark she fell ... a hole. 13. Seeing the thief she made ... the door ... the next room but he jumped ... her and said she mustn't move a step. 14. At last we arrived ... Tokyo. 15. She dipped her pen ... the

inkstand. 16. He threw the document ... the fireplace but put its copy ... the drawer. 17. Shall we start ... the station at once? 18. We arrived ... England successfully. 19. They reported that they had come ... the very cave and could not see the mysterious snow-man. 20. When I arrived ... the camp all the people were gone; some were on their way ... the mountains, others moved ... the forest in the hope of finding the traces of the lost expedition.

**Ex. 8. Insert prepositions *from, out of*.**

1. Are you ... home? 2. When he was turning the box upside-down something fell ... it. 3. He poured some wine ... the bottle. 4. 'They say, yesterday a madman ran ... the madhouse. – 'I don't believe it. It is hardly possible to run ... the room that is behind three locked doors'. 5. He fell ... the chair exhausted. 6. ... where is this colour illustration? It is evidently torn ... some book. 7. A crocodile appeared ... the river. 8. Here is a letter ... your father. 9. The house was already on fire when the inhabitants woke up and began to run ... it. 10. Can the lion break ... the cage? 11. A fish leapt ... the water into the air. 12. Tons and tons of water rushed ... the broken water-pipe. 13. He carefully crawled ... the hiding-place. 14. Indians were driven ... their places onto mountains and deserts to give place to the Europeans coming ... England, France and Spain. 15. She lost her gold ring ... the finger.

**Ex. 9. Insert prepositions *from, behind, above* and other prepositions.**

1. We did not hear anything ... the house. 2. Many rivers flow ... ice and snow of high mountains. 3. These monkeys are imported ... the river Yantzi, China. 4. He took the paper ... his coat. 5. Take the suitcase ... the bed. 6. Someone called me ... the window of the seventh storey. 7. The noise of rain and wind came ... the house. 8. ... the river a man cried for help but we had no boat to cross it. 9. People on the Earth can get information ... the interplanetary rocket with a man aboard, as well as he is in a position to receive news ... his ship. 10. Something whitish stood out ... the black trees of the forest.

**Ex. 10. Insert prepositions *from, off, out of, from behind, above* etc.**

1. The snake showed its head ... the grass. 2. I came ... Riga yesterday. 3. Don't jump ... the motor-car until it stops. 4. She swept the dust ... the picture and asked the son: 'Why have you taken it ... the box?' 5. Take that book ... the bookshelf and write this expression ... it, ... lesson fifteen if I am not mistaken. 6. Some children ran ... the forest crying and laughing. 7. I like to walk in the forest with snow falling ... the trees. 8. Somebody ...

me signalled something to me but he was too far above me and I did not understand him. 9. She gave me a letter ... my brother, which she took ... the letter box. 10. Parachutists jumped ... the airplane one after another. 11. 'Where are you going ...?' – 'I'm ... the conference'. 12. A dog dashed ... the bushes barking at me. 13. Where did you get it ...? 14. Who has torn two maps ... the atlas? Shame! 15. The huge wave swept two men ... the deck but we managed to pull them ... the water.

**Ex. 11. Insert prepositions of place and movement.**

1. She saw his eyes move ... line ... line of his newspaper. 2. It takes him 20 minutes to go down ... the mine and about 40 minutes to get ... it. 3. We went ... the place ... where we made our daily expeditions ... the mountains. 4. He jumped ... the boat ... the bank and fell ... the water and when he got ... it he was wet ... the skin. 5. Young men like to jump ... the water ... a high platform. 6. But one fish jumped ... the fishing net and fell ... the water. 7. ... whom did you receive it? 8. Suddenly he saw Dick running ... the corner, evidently ... his office. He came ... us and said he was hurrying ... the nearest taxi park in the hope of going ... the stadium and buying a ticket. 9. The smoke ... the chimneys showed us that we advanced ... an industrial centre. 10. That river flows ... the north, ... the Atlantic ocean ... which it brings its waters. 11. When mother was bringing in the cutlets ... the kitchen, he jumped ... her and snatched one ... the dish. He was so hungry! 12. I wanted to turn ... a lane on the right as it seemed quieter. 13. Water turns ... snow or steam. 14. I took my notebook ... the bag and went ... the blackboard.

**Ex. 12. Insert prepositions *at, in*.**

1. Usually he was a slow, careful driver, stopping dead ... every crossroad. 2. There is a restaurant ... the very top of the mountain. Have you ever been ... it? 3. There was only one woman ... the bus stop. 4. Yesterday a fire took place ... the theatre that is near my house. You know it, we saw The Gadfly ... this theatre. 5. The train stopped ... a small station with no people ... the building and on the platform. 6. Will the conference be held ... London? 7. 'Where's your son?' – 'He's either ... the institute where they were going to have a party, or ... the skating-rink'. 8. Do they sell cigarettes ... the corner of Arbat? 9. We shall meet ... the place where I met you yesterday. 10. The boy stood ... the corner. He was punished. 11. He was waiting for her ... the foot of the staircase. 12. A long procession appeared ... the farther end of the bridge. 13. Does he work ... this bureau? 14. The skyscrapers of New York are mostly built ... the head of the island. 15. We are ... an altitude of 15, 000 feet. 16. The great admiral was born ... an unknown village and died ... a decisive sea-battle. 17. Is he ... school now

or ... the club? 18. Try to fix it ... the very centre of the design. 19. We stopped the night ... a tourist camp ... a little mountain village, as there was no bed ... the inn. 20. Calcutta is ... the mouth of the Ganges.

**Ex. 13. Insert prepositions *at, in* and *on*.**

1. He is always ... work, I never see him ... rest. 2. Do you like faces ... the pictures by Surikov? 3. What do they produce ... the factory? Agricultural machines? I saw some ... the factory yard. 4. Are there such gases ... the atmosphere of Venus as ... the Earth? 5. So many people ... the street! 6. Your hair is in disorder. Can't you see it ... the mirror? 7. What reports were given and heard ... the conference? 8. What people live ... that island? 9. Uranium is an important goods ... the world market. 10. 'Can lions be found ... this territory?' – 'They hardly can. But ... the area beyond the Zambezi river they are met with rather often, especially ... the savannah, which begins ... the point where those two rivers flow in different directories'. 11. Birds feel comfortable ... the trees sitting ... branches and covered with leaves. 12. There was so much dust ... the mirror! 13. Do you like to lie ... the sun? 14. Spots ... the sun do not prevent lying ... the sun. 15. Snow already lay ... some places ... the mountains. 16. What do you see ... the picture? Describe! 17. There is a rich vegetation ... this island. 18. He lay ... his back ... the bottom of the boat. 19. There was much fruit ... all the trees. 20. Not a cloud ... the sky.

**Ex. 14. Insert prepositions *on* and *over*.**

1. A fly crawled ... the ceiling, then ... the table. 2. There are many dirty spots ... the ceiling. 3. The fury of war swept ... the country. 4. What atmosphere is ... Venus? We do not know as yet because all ... it there are thick clouds or something alike. 5. It is pleasant to lie ... the grass. 6. Newspapers report of new accidents ... the border of these two Asiatic countries. 7. You can write ... both sides of the paper. 8. A powerful cyclone formed ... the Pacific ocean and swept ... China. 9. There was a basket ... her left arm and a purse in the right hand. 10. She spread a large carpet ... the floor.

**Ex. 15. Use prepositions *at, in, on, over* and *through(out)* in the sentences below, observing the resulting difference in the meaning.**

1. There is always water ... the ground even in a desert. The ground was wet, water stood ... the ground everywhere. After the rainy season there was water ... the whole region. 2. We are ... the top of the skyscraper. We lay ... the top of a pile of boards. 3. I saw such a hat ... the head of a woman yesterday. Who knows what is ... his head! I was lucky enough having some sort of roof ... my head. I saw him ... the head of the demon-



stration. 4. There was a dead calm ... the sea. There was a black shadow ... the sea. 5. The fruit ... the picture looks natural. So many dirty spots ... the picture! He spread some oil ... the picture to make it cleaner. 6. In winter some birds and animals sleep ... the snow: it is warmer than to stop the night ... it. We could not find the fox, as fresh snow was ... the area. 7. They suffer from an epidemic of grippe ... England. The epidemic of grippe spread ... Western Europe. 8. There is an island ... the mouth of the Ob. What's ... your mouth, Bob? He wiped the mouth passing his hand ... it. 9. A large stone lay ... the bottom of the lake. He stood ... the bottom of the bed.

**Ex. 16. Insert prepositions *before, in front of, against.***

1. ... me two men silhouetted ... the evening sky but I did not know them. 2. We found her standing ... a picture, deep in meditation. 3. He put the thing ... the blind man. 4. A completely unknown future lay ... him. 5. She looked at the house with two street-lamps ... it. 6. A sail stood out ... the blue of the sea. 7. Numerous chimneys silhouetted ... the gray clouds. 8. There is always a bottle ... him on a little table placed ... the fireplace. 9. Figures and shades mixed up ... him, and he fell down.

**Ex. 17. Insert prepositions *after, behind, beyond.***

1. As seen from the Earth, Mars is ... Mercury while Jupiter and Saturn are far ... them. 2. If you come ... someone into the room do not fail to close the door ... you. 3. First aid moves ... the attacking units, only hospitals are ... the front line. 4. There was a feeling that someone walked closely ... me, just on my heels. 5. They stopped embarrassed: what is ... these snow-capped mountains? 6. We could not buy tickets to sit next to one another; so he sat ... me. 7. Barking dogs ran ... the poor man until he disappeared ... the next house. 8. He hid himself ... a wall. 9. There was a bright moon, but it was ... the clouds. 10. They left the field ... them. 11. The hunter walked ... the dog that was running ... the wolf ... the bushes. 12. The unemployed ... the gate looked ... the retiring police. 13. We do not know what is ... the Solar system. 14. He entered the room ... her. 15. She puts his letters ... the mirror on the wall.

**Ex. 18. Insert prepositions *at, beside, by, near.***

1. He was close ... my elbow. 2. She took a seat ... them. 3. Who is the woman sitting ... him? 4. The wash-stand is ... the door. 5. The lost watch was found ... the very path. 6. Sit down ... the window: it's cool there. 7. The chair standing ... the table is the one I usually sit in. 8. There were two benches ... the fountain. 9. She sat down ... the bed of the wounded placing the medicine on the table ... her. 10. She went to the window and stopped ... it looking over the roofs of the houses. 11. The student standing

... the blackboard is writing something on it. 12. He took a seat ... the table placing his elbows on it. 13. 'What are you doing ... this house at this hour?' the constable suspiciously asked him. 14. When going to bed, she puts her watch ... her on the shelf. 15. Ticket-collectors stand ... the entrance, not ... it.

**Ex. 19. Insert prepositions *about, around, near*.**

1. He followed them ... a respectful distance. 2. He looked ... him but there was no wolf ... the camp. 3. 'Where is my dog?' – 'I think, somewhere ... the house, evidently, ... the kitchen door'. 4. The spectators sitting ... the rink were dissatisfied that the Mexican did not yield to their favourite prize boxer. 5. Dean's office is ... classroom two, next door to it if I'm not mistaken. 6. Nobody was seen ... the distance, at least before the bushes growing all ... our lonely camp. 7. Mushrooms grow ... the trees, not in the open, my dear. 8. It was not easy for the spy to enter the house: a soldier walked ... the windows, another stood ... the door, while a third one was seen ... some short distance. 9. Is there anybody ... us? Can we speak our secret? 10. We stood ... his bed listening to his sad story. 11. There is no water ... this place for miles and miles. 12. There were lines ... his eyes. 13. He looked ... him with interest. 14. All ... him were talking and laughing. 15. She put her arm ... the girl's shoulders.

**Ex. 20. Insert prepositions *above, over*.**

1. Banners waved ... their heads. 2. At stadiums seats rise row ... row. 3. Stars sprinkled ... our heads. 4. Clouds spread ... the town. 5. At our institute clocks are ... every door in the corridor. 6. Her hair hung ... her eyes. 7. A flock of birds wheeled ... the river. 8. Put on something ... your coat, it is cold. 9. His voice rose ... the noise of the street. 10. He ran his hand ... his face. 11. We looked at the signboard ... the entrance. 12. Only tall trees were seen ... the cloud of dust, left by the caravan. 13. There was a lamp ... the table throwing light all ... it. 14. Old trees hung ... the river throwing shadows ... the water. 15. He opened his umbrella ... his wife and daughter standing himself with nothing ... his bare head. 16. The moon was right ... the roof of the skyscraper. 27. The skyscraper is seen from everywhere ... all other tall houses.

**Ex. 21. Insert prepositions *below, beneath, under (neath) and down*.**

1. It is very curious to stand somewhere high on a peak while the clouds are ... you, and then to go ... the slope, through their darkness and see ... you not the clouds but the mountains. 2. Many ancient buildings or ruins are ... the sands of Egypt and Asia Minor. 3. The animals staggered ... their bur-

den. 4. This town is situated ... Vesuvius. 5. Nothing could be found ... the fresh snow that lay thick ... the trees. 6. I hope you have put on something ... the shirt? 7. Do you see something moving just ... the horizon? 8. Three miles ... the town the adventurers made their landing. 9. Heaps of dust were ... their feet on the floor. 10. The girl turned pale ... the rouge on her cheeks. 11. Much water has flown ... old London bridge. 12. He stood on the riverbank ... a tree. 13. Two passers-by went ... their umbrella. 14. You must write on the line, not ... it! 15. The tunnel is laid ... the river.

**Ex. 22. Insert prepositions *across, at, through, by*.**

1. Some soldiers marched ... the bridge. 2. The first train was sent ... the tunnel. 3. Electricity is sent ... wires to give us light and drive machinery. 4. A French window is both a window and a door. It allows to enter ... it into the room. 5. He entered ... the gate. 6. Tom Sawyer returned home ... the window, as he was afraid to enter ... the door. 7. Neither Mr. Pickwick, nor Mr. Wardle wanted to enter first, so they came into the hall ... the door together almost breaking their bones. 8. Whenever a soldier tried to crawl into the citadel ... the break in the wall, he was immediately killed by the defenders until the troops rushed into the town ... the town gate. 9. The light of the summer sun streamed in ... the open window. 10. She was peeping ... the key-hole. 11. Train rush ... the tube of the underground railway at neck-breaking speed.

**Ex. 23. Insert prepositions of place connected with some nouns of everyday use.**

***Bed.***

1. Night tables are placed ... the bed. 2. Go ... bed, Tom! 3. He jumped ... bed. 4. I'm afraid he's still ... bed. 5. He was sitting ... his friend's bed. 6. Exhausted and dead tired, he was sleeping ... his bed without removing the boots but with his revolver under the pillow. 7. So much dust ... the bed! No wonder insects may be found ... it and ... it! 8. She read a book ... the bed of the sick child. 9. 'The star' lay ... the bed reading a magazine and threshing a chair under her feet.

***School.***

1. Her children go ... school: they are still school age. 2. 'Where's your son?' – 'He 's ... school: having a good time there'. 3. Did you learn astronomy ... school? 4. The lower classes ... schools are very often large and congested. 5. There was a fire ... our school ... last night. 6. A school-fellow is one taught ... the same school at the same time. 7. They often invite lecturers ... that school. 8. She hoped to be a teacher ... school.

### *Table.*

1. ... table she liked to sit beside him. 2. He always remained ... table long after dinner. 3. Officers and private soldiers ate ... different tables. 4. They sat down ... a round table. 5. There's a cat ... the table. 6. Please remove your legs ... the table, John! 7. There was a note ... the table. 8. Take your elbows ... the table, Marry. 9. A map was spread ... the table. 10. They moved chairs ... the table. 11. He was sitting ... the table writing something. 12. There is a lamp ... the table.

### *Road.*

1. A procession was moving ... the road. 2. After bombing there remained many holes ... the road. 3. The Moscow canal runs just ... this road. 4. I saw nobody ... the road. 5. There is a sharp bend ... the road near the bridge. 6. You may drive at top speed only ... a straight road. 7. Within five minutes they were ... the road, and off. 8. 'Where is the post-office?' – 'It's round the corner, right ... the road'. 9. In our village dogs carelessly run ... the road. Once I saw one lying ... the road; killed. 10. Shall we go ... the road or across it to cut the way in the bend? 11. Snow lay ... the road, in places even ice. It was so slippery that cars slid ... the road and went ... it into the ditches.

### *Platform.*

1. Our train leaves ... platform two. 2. The train is ... the platform. It's time to get aboard. 3. The ticket was lost ... the platform. 4. There is a bridge ... the three platforms of the station. 5. What platform does the train arrive ... ? 6. The porter brought our luggage ... the platform. 7. A dog appeared ... the platform at the moment when a train sped through ... the two platforms without stop. It was cut in two, poor creature! 8. A man was sweeping the dirt ... the platform ... the track.

### *Street.*

1. ... what street does he live, you say? 2. People hurried ... the street in twos, in threes, in groups. 3. A girl went ... the street without looking around causing a traffic block. 4. What is ... the street? Tubes and wires. 5. He walked ... and ... the streets of London. 6. Dead and wounded lay ... the street in groups. 7. An aeroplane was flying ... the street machine-gunning the defenders of the town.

### *House.*

1. She lives ... that house. 2. On arrival he went ... the house seen behind the trees. 3. She rushed ... the house. 4. The doctor went ... the house directing his steps to another patient. 5. The robbers ran ... the house. 6. She never invited any one to dine ... her house. 7. I failed to find him ... the

house. 8. Considering the length of time he was ... the house I don't think it is polite. 9. I returned ... the house ... which I lodged. 10. Children were running ... the house chasing one another. 11. Tom Sawyer said treasures were hidden ... the houses haunted by ghosts. 12. No sound came ... the house: it seemed to us, standing in the street, deserted. 13. It was very hot ... the house. 14. Gardens are either ... the houses or ... them. 15. The police expected to arrest him ... the house but they failed to find him whether ... the house or in the yard. 16. Black clouds gathered ... the house and gusts of the wind swept ... it. 17. There were hurried footsteps, and questions, and weeping all ... the house.

### ***Corner.***

1. There was a boy ... the corner, face to the wall; punished. 2. Do they sell cigarettes ... your corner? 3. A car tore down ... the corner at neck-breaking speed. 4. The museum is ... the corner. 5. She looked ... the corner with curiosity. 6. ... the corner of those streets the tram stopped. 7. He hid himself ... the corner of the building.

## **Prepositions of Time**

**Ex. 1. Complete the sentences with *on time* or *in time*.**

Model: The bus was late this morning, which is unusual. It's usually **on time**.

1. George is usually late for work but this morning he arrived ... . 2. I washed your shirt this morning but it should be dry ... for you to wear it this evening. 3. We had to get on the train without tickets because we didn't get to the station ... to buy them. 4. It's a very good train service. The trains always run ... . 5. Our car is being repaired. I hope it's ready ... for our holidays. 6. Our best player was injured in the last match. We hope he will be fit ... to play in the next game. 7. Please don't be late for the meeting. We want to begin ... . 8. We plan to go to America in two week's time, but we're still waiting for our visas. I hope they arrive ... . 9. I like to get up ... to have a big breakfast before going to work.

**Ex. 2. In this exercise you have to make sentences with *just in time*.**

Model: A dog ran across the road in front of the car. You saw it at the last moment (I/manage/stop/time) ... **I managed to stop just in time.**

1. Tom was going to sit on the chair you had painted. You said, 'Don't sit on that chair!' so he didn't. (I/stop/him/time). I ... . 2. You were walking home without an umbrella. Just after you got home, it started to rain heavily. (I/get home/time). ... . 3. You thought you were going to miss the beginning

of the film, but it began just as you sat down in the cinema. (I/get/the cinema/film) ...

**Ex. 3. Complete these sentences with *at* or *in*.**

Model: The players shook hands **at** the end of the match.

1. It took John a long time to find a job after he left school. ... the end he found a job as a waiter.
2. 'When do you get paid?' '... the end of the month'.
3. Are you going away ... the beginning of August or ... the end?
4. I couldn't decide what to get Ann for her birthday ... the end I didn't get her anything at all.
5. We waited ages for a taxi. We gave up ... the end and walked home.
6. ... the end of the course the students usually have a party.
7. I'll be moving to a new address ... the end of September.
8. His illness got worse and worse. ... the end he had to go into hospital for an operation.
9. Tom didn't want to lend us the money at first but ... the end he agreed.

**Ex. 4. Insert prepositions *till, until, to, before*.**

1. He fought against them long ... it.
2. Don't put it off ... the last moment.
3. Europeans had had no idea of tobacco ... the 16<sup>th</sup> century.
4. He looked around ... sitting down.
5. The house was locked ... the return of the family from the South.
6. ... this day I have never troubled about it.
7. The alarm clock woke her ... five.
8. He said: 'Living like this he will be old ... his time'.
9. The meeting was put off ... Tuesday.
10. We had not known it ... October.
11. He never smokes ... breakfast.
12. He worked from morning ... night.
13. They had not slept ... arrival at the inn.
14. We came to the village ... sunset.
15. School hours are from 8.15 ... 11.15.
16. ... that time the country was independent.
17. He did not return ... next morning.
18. I can stay with you ... any hour.
19. The time passed in this manner ... seven o'clock.
20. We could sleep ... dawn.
21. Will he come ... dinner, or after it?
22. He arrived ... us and was playing with the children ... our arrival.

**Ex. 5. Insert prepositions *since, from*.**

1. Little Hans worked in his garden ... morning to night.
2. This document dates ... 1892.
3. ... that day he has never smiled.
4. ... what day will you give up night work?
5. The weather has considerably improved ... last month.
6. I believe, this iron knife is ... the 5<sup>th</sup> century.
7. I have been waiting for you ... two o'clock.
8. Ever ... that very first moment Anne had laughed at him.
9. He had been on foot ... five the morning before.
10. His grandfather hadn't changed an idea ... the cradle to the grave.
11. She had had no counsel and guidance almost ... infancy.
12. They were very busy ... morning till night.
13. We had eaten no food ... midday.
14. Several days had passed... her journey.
15. It grew colder and colder ... day to day.

**Ex. 6. Insert prepositions *after, past*.**

1. It's ten ... nine. ... supper we can have a walk. 2. ... that I never saw him here. 3. It was ... noon when he woke up. 4. He is an elderly gentleman ... the age of adventures. 5. They left the town ... the ceremony. 6. It was... midnight but he still worked. 7. If we come ... the appointed time, he will not receive us. 8. ... the parade we saw the demonstration. 9. They analysed the game ... the match was over. 10. Who will believe you ... this? 11. I'm ... the retirement age but they are letting me stay on. 12. What did you do ... dinner? 13. ... a few minutes of thinking I fell asleep. 14. 'I don't mind your returning a little ... midnight', she said. 15. Year ... year I have been watching them.

**Ex. 7. Insert prepositions *from, since, on, past, after*.**

1. He was received by the President immediately ... his arrival. 2. I never sleep ... dinner. 3. Look here! It's 20 ... six. I've been waiting two hours and twenty minutes ... four o'clock. Will you keep me waiting ... seven? 4. India has been independent ... 1947. 5. 'No mistakes of this kind ... now on!' he decided. 6. We've had no food ... 6 a.m. I'm just dying. 7. I have lived in this village ... my boyhood. 8. 'What did you do ... six forty-five?' they asked him ... the arrest. 9. It was nearly an hour ... noon. 10. We work ... 9 a.m. and finish at 5 p.m., but sometimes ... that hour. 11. This manuscript dates ... 500 before our era. 12. So we shall meet in exactly a month ... now. 13. It has been raining week ... week ... the 25<sup>th</sup> of September. 14. She left the town ... her marriage. 15. The infantrymen went into action ... landing on the shore of the lake. 16. She had laughed at him ever ... that very moment. 17. Ann was ... the age of romance: it was only money that mattered. 18. ... when have you been working at this plant? 19. ... receiving the permit she went to the aerodrome to board her plane. 20. ... tea they played a game of chess.

**Ex. 8. Insert prepositions *in, on*.**

1. ... May many families usually move into the country. 2. ... the second day, however, he fell ill and ... the 6<sup>th</sup> of November died. 3. ... the 16<sup>th</sup> century Russia had two wars with the Tartars. 4. Can't come to you ... Monday: we're going to the cinema. 5. ... the evening she often switches on the radio set, but ... that fine evening she preferred to go out for a walk. 6. Whom did you see ... his birthday? 7. Can we meet ... the afternoon? 8. He arrived... a rainy morning ... October. 9. ... the night of the third day they gathered to hear his last will. 10. A fire broke out ... the night. 11. ... the following day, ... the 18<sup>th</sup> or 19<sup>th</sup> of July, I don't remember the date exactly, we left the camp. 12. She had very few toys ... her childhood. 13. He promised to behave better ... future. 14. He jumped out of bed early ...

the morning as always ... working days. 15. Do you go fishing ... summer? As to me, it's my hobby both ... summer and ... winter, except ... frosty days. 16. ... what day did he promise to return? 17. Some people are frightened to leave their houses ... such night. 18. ... the age of atom it is quite possible. 19. ... my days it was different. 20. ... rainy days we don't go mushrooming, or go only ... the day-time. 21. Autumn begins ... September. 22. They married ... the New Year's Day.

**Ex. 9. Insert prepositions *during, for*.**

1. ... World War II millions of people suffered from hunger. 2. It is forbidden to talk ... the lesson. 3. No accident took place ... the night. 4. We ordered a steamship ... Sunday to take our students out of town for recreation. 5. I haven't seen you ... ages, old boy! 6. ... the interval we talked our business. 7. ... the next lesson you will prepare this article. 8. ... centuries education was the privilege of the rich. 9. I decided to do it ... my vacation. 10. We walked through the bushes ... hours and met nobody. 11. ... a moment he stood still. 12. She felt she must forget it ... a few days at least.

**Ex. 10. Insert prepositions *during, for, in, on, over, throughout*.**

1. ... the entire campaign we needed guns. 2. ... the night he heard the cough of the sick man. 3. ... his cup of coffee he decided he would go to her. 4. All ... the afternoon she thought of what he had said about Walter. 5. Is it possible ... a progressive age! 6. ... the evening the snow turned to rain. 7. Jean was away, staying ... a few days with a friend. ... that stay he was nervous: would she return ... Friday? 8. All ... this period documents were occasionally written in English, but mostly in French. 9. What did you do ... the school hours, boy? 10. I believe ... the future we shall not have what we had ... the past. 11. Snow began ... a frosty afternoon and was falling ... the whole period until next morning when it stopped snowing ... a few hours but only to continue ... the evening. 12. ... all the long afternoon the soldiers were idle. 13. He dreamed about Capri ... all these years. 14. I'm afraid it will last ... hours and hours. 15. They disappeared ... night. 16. 'Can you stay ... the weekend?' – 'No, I can't, I have an engagement ... tomorrow.' 19. Six trains arrive ... the morning, according to the timetable ... this year. But take my advice and go by 2.15 train, as ... the afternoon trains are not overcrowded.

**Ex. 11. Insert prepositions *at, about, by, in, towards*.**

1. '... what time do we arrive?' – '... one p.m.'. 2. We shall reach the place ... half an hour, ... the appointed time. 3. It is useless to discuss the problem ... present. But ... Thursday the situation will have been clear. 4. Wait



for me: I'll return ... ten minutes. 5. He came in ... the very moment of out departure. 6. I went to bed ... midnight or ... it, I don't remember exactly. 7. Get up ... sunrise and go to bed ... sunset. It is not easy but healthy. 8. People are not interested in it ... my age. 9. ... time the aeroplane appeared over our heads but did no harm. 10. Do it ... once! 11. I'll return it ... a week or so. 12. It was arranged that we should meet ... a quarter past nine. But ... that time we were still en route and arrived only ... ten to ten. 13. I believe, it is not important whether he came ... two sharp or ... that time? 14. ... the age of 18 he was one of the best chess players of the country. 15. ... the beginning of long vacation, Hugly comes to town. 16. She promised to come back ... no time, and she did. 17. ... moonrise the mountains are beautiful. 18. The conference was to resume the discussion ... a month. 19. ... this moment, he felt he would like to go home.

## Prepositions of Grammatical and Lexical Relations

### Ex. 1. Insert prepositions *by*, *with*.

1. Was he killed ... lightning? 2. Did you see it ... your own eyes? 3. It was a report ... Colonel B. 4. The chairman banged ... his fist to restore the order. 5. She was wounded ... a heavy stone from the top of the mountain: there was a landslide. 6. The road was lit ... the starlight. 7. They feed animals ... hay and grass. 8. So I was told ... them. 9. It was a picture ... an unknown artist. 10. They bombarded him ... questions. 11. Don't stuff your head ... such silly ideas! 12. Here is a new story ... O. Henry. 13. That despot killed his enemies ... poison. 14. The doctor shook his head. 'I'm afraid she is killed ... some poison. Is she a chemist?' – 'She is. You think it's a case of negligence?' – 'Exactly'. 15. We cut meat ... a knife but eat it ... a fork. 16. What do we hear ... ? 17. He was hated ... so many and loved ... so few! 18. The ground was covered ... snow. 23. He was attracted ... this loud conversation. 24. It is forbidden ... law.

### Ex. 2. Insert prepositions *with*, *in*, *from*, *to*, *through*, *among* in the sentences below observing the resulting difference in the meaning.

- Some pictures were ... oils and some ... blue or black pencils.
  - Artists paint ... brushes, they draw sketches ... a pen, pencil or a brush.
  - The walls were painted ... green.
- We draw ... a pencil and get pictures ... pencil.
  - Don't write ... the pencil as documents ought to be written ... ink. If you haven't got a pen I'll provide you ... one. Here it is.
  - They were in constant correspondence writing their letters ... a secret ink. But the police intercepted their

letters, and all that was written ... the secret ink came out after heating the paper.

3. a) People arrived ... twos, ... groups, ... crowds. b) A man pushed his way ... the crowd and disappeared round the corner. c) I went ... the crowd to see the parade. d) Do you see him ... the crowd? He is in a green felt hat. e) There were some women ... the crowd.
4. a) They ended the evening ... a song performed ... chorus. b) What preposition must we end this sentence ... ? c) ... the end of that summer came news of the civil war in Spain. d) We walked the corridor ... end ... end. e) ... the end of the day the weather grew colder, and at 11 p.m. we had a heavy snow-fall.

**Ex. 3. Insert prepositions *out of, of, to, for, with, from, through, by*.**

1. She shivered ... cold. 2. They were speechless ... terror. 3. He is said to have died ... malaria fever. 4. He perished ... neglect. 5. They are celebrated ... their hospitality. 6. Eighteen soldiers ... thirty were killed or wounded. 7. He jumped ... joy. 8. She cried ... terror. 9. Do it ... respect to their feeling! 10. It can only happen ... a lack of knowledge. 11. Six tons ... ninety-four were spoilt by sea water. 12. Speak! We burn ... impatience. 13. He was evidently eaten ... curiosity. 14. They burst ... laughter. 15. Do you suffer ... cold? 16. His face was white ... fear, the General's red ... anger. 17. Is that the reason ... the fire? 18. I think that will give rise ... general dissatisfaction. 19. They say there was no stimulus ... any improvement. 20. The hill was green ... vegetation though in places it was black ... wet ground. 21. 'Did he die ... the wound?' – 'No, he died years later ... old age, in bed'. 22. He looked puzzled and red ... irritation. 23. He acted ... sheer curiosity, not ... thirst for knowledge. 24. They shook ... laughter. 25. The river was white ... foam. 26. She left him eaten up ... shame. 27. It occurred ... no fault of ours. 28. She liked him the more ... that reason. 29. It was an impulse ... the development of chemistry. 30. Motives ... these plans are clear now. 31. The air was foul ... the smell of beer and tobacco. 32. His heart jumped ... delight. 33. She flushed ... irritation. 34. He was cross ... sleep. 35. She helped him ... compassion. 36. He died ... poison. 37. He was trembling ... age and ... rage. 38. The little girls screamed ... joy. 39. He was ill...overwork. 40. She was apparently bursting ... contradicting feelings. 41. I'm sorry, it was done ... mistake. 42. Do you suffer ... it? 43. What is he famous ... ? 44. I've met her just ... accident.

**Ex. 4. Insert the prepositions *to, of, against, from*.**

1. It will result in failure ... him. 2. He is absolutely proof ... flattery. 3. They fought ... the last man. 4. I was driven ... desperation. 5. He worked ... the

utmost of his power. 6. ... my surprise, he succeeded. 7. I'll struggle ... the limit of my resources. 8. The heat amounted ... 59°. 9. She could cook ... perfection. 10. You are wet ... the skin. 11. Is it transparent ... light? 12. I was unaware ... what was going on around me. 13. Is it impenetrable ... radiation? 14. It is inexplicable ... me. 15. He seemed certain ... his ways. 16. Don't ride your horse ... death. 17. Are you sure ... it? 18. Let's put an end ... it! 19. We calculated the cost of it ... a pence. 20. He arrived punctually ... a minute, as usual. 21. Are you immune ... this disease? 22. Are there any obstacles ... it? 23. You have no access ... such documents. 24. She made no secret of it ... her parents. 25. She was conscious ... and sensitive ... the possible results of it. 26. He was blind ... what expected him! 27. It is evident ... everybody. 28. He wanted to close his eyes ... the future. 29. It seems ... me you are wrong. 30. It is a mystery ... me. 31. If you are so uncertain ... it why do you keep to it? 32. It was so dark that he became invisible ... us. 33. Football is irresistible ... many. 34. They reduced him ... poverty. 35. This car is proof ... bullets. 36. The glass was broken ... pieces. 37. Are you certain ... it? 38. The approaches ... the town were blocked. 39. Can't you discern good ... bad? 40. She was agitated almost ... fainting. 41. The excitement rose ... its climax. 42. This distinguished him ... other writers. 43. Isn't it clear ... you? 44. She was aware ... the coming winter, was conscious ... the fact that the hut was penetrable ... cold and wind but could not avert it. 45. The value of the thing ran ... the figure, which I could not afford. 46. There were more than six entrances ... the palace of the ruler, five of which either closed ... everybody but himself, or unknown ... anybody. 47. Do you know your friends ... enemies? 48. I'm afraid you are ignorant ... what awaits you. 49. It is useless to conceal it ... me: I am conscious ... it all the time.

**Ex. 5. Insert prepositions *to, against, of, from, into, in.***

1. Mr. Pickwick immediately fell ... sleep. 2. Representatives of townsfolk were, however, eliminated ... the members of the Parliament. 3. They broke ... the house in daylight, broke many things ... pieces but found almost nothing of value. 4. It was obvious ... me that he could not translate ... the Arabic language ... Russian. 5. Water is constantly changing ... steam ... ice. 6. I hope, you can make this old overcoat ... a coat for little Mary? 7. The scheme was set ... motion. 8. He was completely cut off ... the outside. 9. Driven ... despair she broke ... sobs. 10. The old woman plunged ... silence, then ... a sound sleep. 11. What is to become ... me? 12. The sky turned ... red ... yellow, then ... green and blue. 13. He put the scheme ... train. 14. His wealth was reduced ... the smallest possible size. 15. She likes dying her dresses ... one colour ... another. 18. Here ornamentation is divorced ... the pattern of the construction. 17. He was severed ... his son

forever. 18. Is it so irresistible ... you that you can't conquer the temptation? 19. The mild spring weather passed ... the heat of summer only to turn ... chill in two months. 20. Don't work yourself ... fury don't fly ... passion! 21. We were separated ... the expedition by a white wall of the snowstorm and miles and miles of distance. 22. He is noted ... his being proof ... flattery; but not bribes, though. 23. A striking insensibility ... outer influences! 24. Words are dead until they are translated ... deeds. 25. Electrical energy is transformed ... mechanical.

**Ex. 6. Insert prepositions *from, by, in, of, with, to*.**

1. He arose ... the table. 2. The dissatisfaction of masses arises ... mismanagement. 3. Eight divided ... four is two. 4. He is older ... six years. 5. Our land is rich ... oil. 6. This coal is low ... heating capacity. 7. The town grew ... number and area. 8. Enormous profits were derived by Belgium ... the Congo. 9. This word is derived ... Latin. 10. He deducted her debt ... the usual payment. 11. They expected a reduction ... prices. 12. They exceeded him ... education ... four years when he had to work hard instead of going to school. 13. This improved the machine ... its adaptability to other operations. 14. There was a defect ... the apparatus. 15. The storm increased ... its strength but the rain dwindled ... its fury. 16. There is a preface ... the book and an addendum ... the second volume. 17. New York is larger ... many square kilometres. 18. They exceeded (outnumbered) us ... 3 thousand men. 19. There is a note ... exercise VI. 20. Siberia is abundant ... timber. 21. He is fertile ... tricks. 22. It was a trunk with two handles ... it. 23. The sport grew ... interest. 24. It proceeds ... the very fact of the crime. 25. The time is fruitful ... events of importance. 26. The hours of work multiplied ... the number of workers give what is called output per hour per person. 27. He yielded ... her in the end. 28. What is the solution ... the problem of using the numerous tributaries ... the river? 29. Roger is older than David ... three years. 30. They are so poor ... this mineral!

**Ex. 7. Insert prepositions *on, at, by*.**

1. He caught the drowning man ... the sleeve while she was pulling him ... the left hand. And then they dragged him ... both hands out of the water. 2. He gazed ... her in amazement. 3. My attention was focused ... it. 4. He decided to operate ... the patient. 5. The sun beat down ... our unprotected heads. 6. He knocked ... the door. 7. He was sipping ... his wine biting ... an apple. 8. The gentleman tapped cautiously ... the window and waited. 9. Jack Herring took the bull ... the horns. 10. He who grasps ... much often loses more. 11. Well, you shall not experiment ... me any more! 12. The talk centred ... the weather. 13. He fixed his glance ... the

servant, and the latter stared back ... him. 14. The house you fixed ... is among the cheapest, I warn you. 15. He cast a significant glance ... him. 16. The policeman hammered ... door after door. 17. The wife was tearing him ... the sleeve, the daughter was tugging ... her father's hand.

**Ex. 8. Insert prepositions *at, by, in*.**

1. I estimate it ... one hundred roubles. 2. They differ ... height, width, and area. 3. She cannot be compared with him ... character. 4. We are ... an altitude of 5,000 feet above sea level. 5. What's the time ... your watch? 6. I shall never yield them ... fighting spirit! 7. The car approached ... a terrific speed. 8. Do you sell them ... the dozen? 9. They are similar ... diameter and height but differ ... colour. 10. Set your watch ... the time-signal. 11. He shaped his way ... his compass only. 12. He was paid ... the month. 13. ... what figure do you fix it? 14. The press was arranged ... a working pressure of 1 ton per square inch. 15. Bananas are sold ... bunches. 16. They differ ... their prices only, as they are similar ... the appearance and colour. 17. She sold it ... a very fair price. 18. We achieved it – but ... what a cost! 19. The deposits of coal are estimated ... about 150 mln. tons. 20. People were dying ... the rate of a hundred a day. 21. I don't want to buy it: there's a disadvantage ... efficiency. 22. Export targets of Great Britain were set ... 425% of 1936 exports.

**Ex. 9. Insert prepositions *to, in, of, over, on, at, with, into, by*.**

1. 'What language do you speak outside your mother tongue?' – 'I speak Italian, but I can read and write ... French'. 2. Bottom your opinion ... facts, never emotions! 3. The letter, addressed ... him, was ... a round handwriting, full of vulgar expressions and with every noun written ... capital letters. 4. He refused to comment ... the latest frontier incidents. 5. This expedition will throw additional light ... the mystery ... the opinion of some people, however, we have jumped ... a chance only. The expedition will result in nothing: the snow-man does not exist. 6. I tried to persuade him ... playing football ... tennis but in vain. 7. ... my mind it is wrong. 8. He sat musing ... the past. 9. Stop arguing ... it, please! 10. His health is poor. Try to talk him ... dropping night work. 11. Guess ... it. If you guess you'll get a bar of chocolate. 12. ... reply ... my letter they sent me their catalogue. 13. ... his estimation, the plant does not work to capacity. 14. Don't answer ... Russian when you are spoken ... English. 15. Unfortunately we have no time to go ... details: let's speak ... brief. 16. A further inquiry ... the matter brought nothing. 17. Do you agree ... me ... that point? 18. ... what subject was the lecture? 19. He shook his head ... it. 20. Don't be rash, don't jump ... conclusion! 21. It is a film ... Indonesia. 22. Help him, just hint ... it. 23. I agree ... your proposal, though generally I don't agree ... you ... the

estimation of the situation. 24. He has been working ... this problem for the second year. 25. Judging ... his appearance he passed the examination successfully. 26. He addressed a few words ... the audience. 27. Look ... the matter carefully, then speak ... it. 28. She expressed her views ... Spanish. 29. Still grinding away ... your Latin ... the examination? 30. ... short, he was dull. 31. The minister avoided to declare ... the policy of his government in that part of the world. 32. She jumped ... the offer. 33. Can it be recommended ... him? 34. It is written ... the style of Milton. 35. He based his opinion ... a heap of arguments. 36. Thousands of photos were ... the exhibition. 37. What will you say ... it? 38. He addressed himself ... the guests. 39. We understand our conduct ... other people's behaviour and judge them ... our ways. 40. He centred ... his feelings. 41. Are you convinced ... it? Judging ... your words, you are not. 42. Do not bank everything ... one thing. 43. She has no influence ... him. 44. It is a satire ... aristocracy. 45. You may jump ... a chance but it is inadvisable to jump ... conclusion as the chance may appear a dark horse. 46. What shall we suggest ... them? ... my thinking, a caravan holiday is the best thing in the circumstances. 47. He got persuaded ... it not until after our repeated efforts. 48. It will completely depend ... whether he agrees ... the point ... her, or not. 49. Does he work ... a new opera? The criticism ... the previous one was not favourable as you know.

**Ex. 10. Insert the prepositions *to, in, of, over, on, at, with, into, by, for, about*.**

1. What a talent ... caricatures! 2. He is an applicant ... admission ... our institute. 3. He subsisted ... bread and cheese. 4. Is she Jack's cousin ... marriage? 5. He is remarkable ... painting sea. 6. She is skilful ... her professional duties. 7. She says she is an Italian ... blood but an American ... education and culture. 8. He lives ... his pension. 9. The prefix *pre-* ... the word *arrange* means that the action was carried out beforehand. 10. She exceeds him ... accuracy of recollection. 11. Don't prompt ... him, Leonora! 12. He is a poor hand ... it. 13. She hates exercises ... grammar. 14. ... your leave, I'll go home. 15. They presented him ... a collection of works by W. Shakespeare. 16. There are two exceptions ... the rule. 17. Learn this short poem ... heart. 18. Please retell the story ... brief ... English. 19. What is he ... calling? 20. He is very obstinate ... his intentions. 21. J. London tried to earn his living ... casual work and ... pen. 22. He took his hat ... a woman. 23. Words ending ... *ous* are adjectives. 24. We wrote a composition ... climate. 25. She isn't his cousin, she is a sister ... him. 26. Tomorrow I take my exam ... geography. 27. She bestowed a richly illustrated book ... her best pupil. 28. He is a Tory ... birth and a perfect idler ... the daily occupation. 29. Do you agree ... his proposal? 30. It's ... my speciality, I'm not a

physician. 31. He bowed ... her and left. 32. Don't judge America ... Europe. 33. What shall we lunch ... ? 34. Why is she so persistent ... it? 35. He was a soldier both ... nature and ... choice. 36. My congratulations ... the happy end of the expedition! 37. She is so clever ... arguing! 38. I hinted ... them ... the solution. 39. He waved ... me, and I stopped to chat ... him ... the hockey championship. 40. A wonderful capacity ... words out of place! 41. She wore black ... his express desire. 42. You may rely ... him. 43. It sheds light ... the mystery. 44. What will she say ... it? 45. Listen ... me attentively.

**Ex. 11. Insert prepositions *to, in, with, by, about, on, upon, for, from, over, of, under.***

1. The luggage was delivered ... us in time. 2. We are eager to co-operate ... it ... you. 3. He contributed a considerable sum of money ... the relief fund. 4. Plunged ... meditation, deep ... thoughts he noticed nothing thinking only of what was ... his conscience. 5. We must render assistance ... our allies in distress. 6. I cannot confide ... a man who is a stranger to me. 7. It is ... my responsibility to look after the pupils of the school. 8. She is a wonderful secretary ... him. 9. Your health is poor. You should consult your doctor and apply ... the administration ... a leave. 10. He has two crimes ... his conscience. 11. We found him busy ... preparing his report. 12. Can she trust herself ... him? Or should she trust ... the darkness and flee? 13. I'm acting ... his instructions. 14. Don't demand too much ... him. 15. He is her superior and she cannot act without submitting reports ... him. 16. She was a little superior ... him in education. 17. To confide ... him meant to trust ... chance, ... luck, and it was hardly reasonable. 18. I cannot entrust my children ... him! 19. She has been for years assistant ... the director. 20. It is obligatory ... them to pay this money to their masters. 21. It was subordinate ... his studies of the subject. 22. ... this assumption, however, she laid her plans. 23. Do you rely ... luck only? 24. He gave up trying to be friends ... her. 25. They would report the matter ... the headquarters. 26. He was ordered to report ... his general. 27. It shook his belief ... him. 28. He hesitated to appeal ... the minister ... sparing her feeling. 29. He conferred ... them under the cover of night. 30. A cup of tea was brought ... him upstairs. 31. All the banks of England passed over ... the Bank of England all gold coins coming into their hands. 32. He was personally liable ... them ... the result of the enterprise. 33. He is inferior ... her ... education and common sense, yet her superior ... station. 34. It is rather late to require anything ... him; he is dead! 35. They argued instead of attending ... their business. 36. I was ... duty tonight. 37. Can I obtain access ... the king? 38. You are ... command, so it is you who is responsible ... the result of the attack. 39. At that time I was ... the command of Colonel Grinev. 40. I hope

to be engaged ... your staff. 41. 'Show obedience ... your superiors', Roger used to say to his son, 'but develop scorn for them'. 42. He was ... government employ. 43. She was ... his pay and was to obey his orders. 44. Today I will be ... the committee and shan't come to dinner. 45. She came to rule ... this domain after her father's death. 46. This custom prevailed ... them. 47. The nervousness dominate ... me. 48. He was appointed ... the command of a regiment. 49. The events ... which he had no control were close at hand. 50. He was ... correspondence ... a pen friend in France.

**Ex. 12. Insert prepositions *at, against, to, with, on, about, over, behind, into.***

1. He raged ... his own stupidity. 2. They mocked ... him. 3. He was ill spoken of ... his back. 4. Suspicion was cast ... her. 5. She murmured ... what she was told to do. 6. He had no heart to rob her ... her hope. 7. There is a good argument ... it, and I object ... your plan. 8. The firm deprived the workers ... many means of earning their living. 9. Don't laugh ... other people's faults unless you want to be laughed ... in turn. 10. I disagree ... you and ... what Mr. Black is saying. 11. He displayed antagonism ... the tsarist government. 12. Are you going to cheat the poor woman ... her last money? 13. You are not right in your anger ... it. 14. Can you give us any reason ... the proposal? 15. It was all a political scheme to cast the blame ... him. 16. Arthur, you are unjust ... me. 17. I don't want to be severe ... any one. 18. Sorry to intrude ... your privacy. 19. He felt an intense resentment ... his wife. 20. They might lead them ... trouble. 21. He sniffed ... it. 22. What are you quarrelling ... ? 23. This expert will report ... you for mismanagement. 24. He sneered ... whatever was proposed. 25. The dog growled ... the passer-by. 26. He was tricked ... it, with no way out. 27. They were deprived ... everything. 28. That was her real grudge ... life. 29. We knew about his disagreement ... his father. 30. This is antagonistic ... the existing institutions. 31. The younger brother put out his tongue ... his sister. 32. You are going to put the responsibility ... her, aren't you? It is unjust ... her. 33. They expressed their indignation ... this step, and he got indignant ... that feeling.

## Revision Exercises

**Ex. 1. Insert prepositions, mostly of place, connected with some nouns of everyday use.**

***Hand.***

1. The diamond went ... hand ... hand and everybody admired it. 2. Are diamonds cut ... hand, or ... a special machinery? 3. Don't be excited, hold yourself ... hand! 4. If you trust it to him the business will be ... safe hands.



5. Never do anything ... hand: first think, then act. 6. ... the one hand it was dangerous, ... the other hand it was most necessary. 7. Today is the twenty-sixth of April; May Day is quite ... hand. 8. Is it done ... your own hands? 9. You'll never get back what is ... his hands, remember! 10. He took it ... her hand and put in his pocket. 11. She blew the dust ... her hands. 12. What is ... your right hand, Bob? 13. They say he is a good hand ... it. 14. Have you tried your hand ... it? 15. 'Hands ... her! Set her free!'

### ***End.***

1. He was walking the corridor ... end ... end waiting. 2. We usually get tired ... the end of the month. 3. I shall remember it ... the end of my days. 4. They fought for a long time, and ... the end the champion admitted he was defeated. 5. Put an end ... this unpleasant practice! 6. ... the end of the table there sat the master. 7. He ended up ... appealing for mercy. 8. There is no end ... it, I think. 9. It may end ... ruin ... me. 10. ... the end of the fixed period he showed impatience. 11. We were ... the end of provisions. 12. We saw a group of tourists ... the end of the street. 13. First read it ... the end, then contradict. 14. Luckily our difficulties were ... an end. 15. What do you think to end it ... ? ... protesting, or ... a reservation duly done?

### ***Foot.***

1. I put my foot ... the neighbour's and apologized. 2. We stopped ... the foot of the hill. 3. Adrian seated ... the foot of the bed. 4. 'It was pleasant to have him ... my feet', thought Irene. 5. He looked at the river flowing ... his feet. 6. He returned bespattered from head ... foot. 7. ... foot the leaves were dry. 8. They came ... foot. 9. The knight fought ... foot. 10. She leapt ... her feet. 11. Sawdust was on the floor ... their feet. 12. Dorian started ... his feet. 13. A wave almost swept him ... his feet, and he fell but managed to scramble ... his feet.

### ***Bottom.***

1. The hill was covered with vegetation from top ... bottom. 2. There was a cave ... the bottom of the hill and another at mid-height. 3. He is an honest man, from top ... bottom. 4. There was much water already ... the bottom of the boat. 5. We saw stones ... the bottom of the lake. 6. Look at the picture ... the bottom of the page. 7. Liquid collects ... the bottom of the body of the car transporting vegetables. 8. He slid ... the bottom of the snowy slope. 9. He stood ... the bottom of the bed.

### ***Top.***

1. We were ... the top of the peak with nothing but clouds overhead. 2. He shouted ... the top of his voice: 'Silence!'. 3. I don't believe it, it's a cock-

and-bull story, ... top to bottom. 4. They say he is ... the top of the business. 5. Our things were put on a cart and ... (the) top of them the man spread a tarpaulin. 6. The top of the peak was flat; so we sat ... it comfortably.

### *Door.*

1. I did not notice ... what door he came into the hall. 2. Where does this door lead ... ? 3. Mrs. David lives next door ... us. 4. He is next door ... a football 'star'. 5. How can you squeeze this huge thing ... the door, I wonder?

### *Window.*

1. The burglar penetrated ... the window of the first floor but had to retire hastily ... the window of the second floor when footsteps were heard in the next room. 2. She put her head ... the window trying to see what was going on below. 3. He looked ... the window frightened by the unexpected explosion nearby. 4. She put a number of flowerpots ... the window on the balcony. 5. Our room is dark, there's a balcony of the next storey right ... the window of the room. 6. On the cord ... the window there were swaddling clothes for drying in the wind.

### *Page.*

1. Look at the picture ... page seventeen. 2. Two diagrams are given ... page 123. 3. The clerk wrote ... the page: 'Cancelled'. 4. Open your textbooks ... page twenty-seven. 5. He worked through the document page ... page. 6. Let's begin ... page nine. 7. The text to the picture is ... page sixteen. 8. You'll find the town on the map ... the next page. 9. There were blots all ... the page. 10. The pupil ran his eyes ... the page looking for the word he had met with several minutes before. 11. You will have to do exercises ... page six ... page seven orally and exercises 22 and 23 ... page eight in written form. 12. Write the summary ... one page, not more; anything ... one page must be reduced to one.

### *Place.*

1. She placed ... him a plate of ham, a knife and a fork. 2. I warn you, this place is not safe ... you when it is dark. 3. She placed a plate of soup ... the table. 4. Any business should be placed ... a sound basis. 5. The place ... which meeting shall be held shall be determined by the Program Committee. 6. Your remark is hardly ... place, my dear boy! 7. The ground was covered with snow but ... places we saw wet earth. 8. Your remark is ... place! 9. His suit seemed odd and ... place. 10. He left for abroad and was ... his place for a month. 11. He whispered to the host: 'Look here, old chap, I think you don't mind my leaving; I feel completely ... place among

your guests of note'. 12. ... the first place he is cunning. 13. ... place of a servant the door was opened by the master himself.

### *Sea.*

1. Fishing boats are often ... sea for days. 2. Twenty-five men were lost ... sea then. 3. The holiday-makers paddled ... the sea with their bare feet. 4. He had saved many lives ... sea. 5. He bought a plot ... the sea. 6. Did you travel ... sea? 7. The boat was carried out ... the sea. 8. There was a shadow ... the sea. 9. British dominions ... the seas have considerably decreased in number, territory and population. 10. We were ... sea for the 16<sup>th</sup> day. 11. Thousands wandered ... the seas earning money, fame, looking for pleasures and simply killing time. 12. I did not know at the time what was going on ... the sea, in Brazil. 13. He wanted to go ... sea but his father persuaded him not to and choose another profession. 14. In summer we'll go ... sea, probably, ... the Baltic sea.

### *Tree.*

1. Mushrooms grow mostly ... trees. 2. He slept ... a tree. 3. Birds live ... the trees. 4. We sat ... a fallen tree. 5. The saw cut ... the tree. 6. Climb ... the tree! 7. He descended ... the tree. 8. There is a hollow ... the tree. 9. She looked ... the tree. 10. Bushes grow ... and about trees. 11. It's late! Jump ... the tree and run off home! 12. Useful materials are extracted ... trees. 13. The old trees ... the lake cast a shadow on it. 14. Legends say treasures were hidden ... the trees conspicuous for their place, or size, or both. 15. Different insects live ... trees.

### **Ex. 2. Insert prepositions *in, into, against, via, of, off, on.***

1. Berries tasted sour ... the rainy summer. 2. I came ... him yesterday. 3. In the dark we stumbled ... stones on the road. 4. This town is situated ... the border, so that one part of it belongs to one country and the other to the other. 5. It was dangerous to stand ... the edge of the rock. 6. We travelled from London to Calcutta ... Capetown and Colombo. 7. When I got clear ... the house I slowed down the pace. 8. There were two men ... the lawn, one of them was working ... it with a lawn-mover. 9. He lives ... the skirts of the town. 10. The measure was brought ... effect. 11. To make more room for the dance we pushed the dinner table ... the wall. 12. He hit ... a brilliant idea. 13. She left with tears ... her eyes. 14. The atmosphere ... Venus is supported to be extremely thick. 15. He was ... the verge of death. 16. He chanced ... his companion lost after they had entered the park, standing ... the verge of the pond. 17. ... the one side the event was interesting, ... the other side I had no time to see it. 18. The criminal was ... the branches, and the pursuers passed him below. 19. There is a little island ... the coast of Africa.

**Ex. 3. Supply the spaces with proper prepositions.**

1. Don't speak about your illness unless you are spoken to: it is ... place. 2. ... what page can I find this rule? 3. He is a fighter ... top ... bottom. 4. They lost their horses and fought ... foot. 5. He walked the corridor ... end ... end; then ... its end, turned and went ... the bottom of the house, into the ground floor, to think the matter over. 6. The matter is ... his hands: you may be calm. 7. If you don't like journalism try your hand ... something different. 8. Don't jump into the water here: there are stones ... the bottom. 9. The prisoner was put ... the bottom of the boat. 10. The Rocky Mountains were ... the route of the settlers moving to California. 11. The car that smashed into the wall was battered ... something shapeless. 12. Does he want to put his threat ... effect? 13. The newspaper went ... hand ... hand. 14. How did you happen ... the house where you had been about fifteen years before? 15. See picture 6 ... the bottom of page 7. 16. 'It's bad. I think it's done ... hand'. – 'I admit it'. 17. What do you suggest to end the party ... ? 18. There was a secret door ... the cellar, of which the police had no idea. 19. I stumbled ... the very thing just by luck. 20. He elbowed ... the crowd ... the end of the street and was lost to the police. 21. He shouted something ... the top of his voice. 22. He smelled ... tobacco and onion. 23. You are experienced when you have gone through your profession ... the end. 24. It's time to put an end ... this practice! 25. She sprang ... her feet. 26. The tragedy ate ... her sense of life. 27. New incidents are reported to have taken place ... the frontier. 28. She already ... her feet attending to one invalid. 29. Do we fly to Paris ... Switzerland? 30. Two boys basked ... the sun ... the wall of the house. 31. What is ... the right side? 32. Your case is ... safe hands; he is a practised hand ... such matters. 33. The police stood ... the door, and when he appeared ... the door they caught him. 34. The spade struck ... something. The chest of gold? 35. Clouds rose ... the horizon. 36. He ended ... appealing not to reason but to arms. 37. He's a brave soldier, ... head ... foot. 38. There is a storm ... sea again. 39. If you chance ... him tell I'm waiting for him. 40. Two steamers stood ... one another.

## Test Yourself

**Ex. 1. Insert prepositions wherever necessary.**

1. They often sit up ... their usual time playing chess ... sunrise. 2. ... receiving the news he hurried ... the post-office to send a reply ... telegraph that he was going to leave ... Riga ... one day or so. 3. Divide the sum ... your four sons equally. 4. They are governed ... the dictator, all the important decisions are taken ... him and put into practice ... his agents elected ... nobody, loved ... nobody, hated ... all. 5. I saw the singer but could not see the man ... the piano. 6. Travelling ... road is usually pleasant

if you must not ascend and descend the slopes, turn too often ... the right and ... the left and stand ... a long time ... crossings. 7. Signature should be a little ... the line. 8. Sunday night he was robbed ... a few steps ... the policeman. 9. Is there a special track ... track events and motor-cycling ... the arena? 10. How many members of the UNO are there ... present? I think more than ... the last year. 11. When the house was on fire a mother threw her baby ... the window of the first storey ... a blanket held ... the men ... the house ... the pavement. 12. Her health is weak: take her ... the country ... next week ... a couple ... weeks. 13. Do you like films ... black and white? As to me I prefer colour pictures. 14. You are free ... the end of the interval ... this period of time you may reach ... the post-office and return ... the office. 15. What shoes are you...! Did you have to walk ... such a mud ... the main street? 16. Electricity travels ... waves. 17. ... the 150<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the university they sent friendly congratulations ... the scientists of the establishment. 18. Are you going to offer it ... them? 19. We write ... ink ... paper. 20. You mustn't spring ... a boat dancing ... the waves! 21. Take the carpet ... the house and beat the dust ... it. Here's good stick ... it. 22. Entering ... the room don't fail to close the door ... you. 23. There is a bridge ... the valley there. 24. He did it ... a secret place ... the house. 25. She appeared ... a violet dress and ... furs. 26. His shirt was stained ... blood. 27. She rides ... a bicycle ... her own; it isn't hers. 28. He was examined ... X-rays. 29. It is printed ... the top of the page. 30. Water is pumped ... pipes ... pumps. 31. He found himself ... wild rocks and bushes. 32. He arrived ... horseback. 33. ... last we approached ... the foot of the hill, with a river flowing ... its foot. 34. ... the storm we sat ... the upper deck. 35. Fill the bottle ... water, please. 36. Listen ... me. It seems to me, someone is calling you ... the house. 37. We'll reach ... the place ... the day ... tomorrow, that's to say ... 45 hours ... now. 38. ... places trees were leafless. 39. She asked ... more tea with no sugar ... it. 40. What do you see ... this picture? 41. What is this campaign ... ? 42. She devoted all her life ... her children. 43. There was a puncture somewhere, and the air found its way ... the tube. 44. Don't peep ... the key-hole. 45. I go ... bus ... the office ... half an hour.

**Key:**

1. at, till; 2. on/upon, to, by, for, in; 3. among; 4. by, by, by, by, by, by; 5. at; 6. along, to, to, for, at; 7. below; 8. within, of; 9. for, on; 10. at, -; 11. out of, on/onto, by, in front of/before, on; 12. to, -, for, of; 13. in; 14. till, during, -, to; 15. in, in, in/on; 16. by; 17. on, to; 18. to; 19. in, on; 20. in, on; 21. out of, out of; 22. -, behind; 23. across; 24. in, in; 25. in, in; 26. with; 27. -, as; 28. by; 29. at; 30. through, by; 31. among; 32. on; 33. at, -, at; 34. during, on; 35. with; 36. to, inside/outside; 37. -, on, after, in, from; 38. at; 39. for, in; 40. in; 41. for/against; 42. to; 43. out of; 44. through; 45. by, to, in.

---

## THE CONJUNCTION

---

**Ex. 1. State the morphological composition of the following conjunctions.**

For, as well as, unless, now that, and, neither ... nor, while, although, not only ... but also; provided, as though, supposing, no sooner ... than, or, so that, if, both ... and, as long as, so, either ... or, as ... as, when, until, before, after, as if, as soon as, lest, for fear that, notwithstanding, nor.

**Ex. 2. Pick out the conjunctions and state whether they are coordinative or subordinative.**

1. A vague remembrance stirred in Andrew's mind as soon as he had looked at the cottage. 2. Daphne kept the promise she had given herself, and it was only when she had finished her coffee that she allowed herself to glance into the corner of the dining room, but –alas– it was empty. 3. And Clyde, as followed Mr. Whiggam, was thinking what a wonderful place Mr. Gilbert Griffiths enjoyed. No doubt he came and went as he chose–arrived at the office late, departed early ... 4. But most of all he (Lanny) would miss Celia, for they had done many things together; shared so much fun and excitement. 5. ... In the very midst of these terrors, I was placed in a situation so ridiculous that even then I had as strong a sense of its absurdity as I have now. 6. While Becky Sharp was on her own wing in the country ... Amelia lay snug in her home of Russel Square; if she went into the wood, it was under the guidance of the elders, nor did it seem possible that any evil could befall her or her cheery, comfortable home. 7. 'If you can arrange facilities for me, so that I can get information on this person, it will be very helpful', said Cain. 8. Eddie rubbed himself a peephole on the frosted pane so he could see the last of Chicago. 9. The more Cain looked at the whole thing, the more ridiculous it seemed. 10. 'I tell you this', said Sommerville, 'because it will do you good to think of your wife while you're behind bars'. 11. Stephanie rose from the counter and walked outside with the idea of following Ruby to the hospital, but changed her mind for fear she might miss her on the way. 12. Hanson said: 'I told her because she was secretary of the school didn't give her any business taking over the functions of the State Educational Committee'. 13. Then Stephanie went on to the People's School where she took Pledger's class along with her own, since Pledger had gone with Dave to the wage conference. 14. Margot Sommerville had pledged herself from the moment she learned her husband was being released on bail, not to discuss the case unless he invited her opinion. 15. 'Supposing you were to find yourself discharged from the faculty, what would you do?' asked Margot. 16. 'Follow a thing through, once you have started it', said the Old Man.

**Ex. 3. Point out all the coordinating conjunctions and define the group each belongs to.**

1. The stranger had not gone far, so he made after him to ask the name. 2. Be quick, or it may be too late. 3. ... real accuracy and purity she neither possessed nor in any number of years acquire. 4. ... Mrs. Septimus Small let fall no word, neither did she question about him. 5. The river was not high, so there was not more than a two or three mile current. 6. It seemed to him that he could contrive to secure for her the full benefit of both his life insurance and his fire insurance. 7. Karl is solid and extremely certain of himself, while Joseph on the other hand, though no less certain of himself, is a good deal less solid. 8. He could see no one, and he began to believe that either his instinct had deceived him, or else that the shadowing was over. 9. But for a long time we did not see any lights, nor did we see the shore, but rowed steadily in the dark riding with the waves.

**Ex. 4. Point out all the subordinating conjunctions and say what kind of subordinate clauses they introduce.**

1. She stood quite silent while Butler appealed to her. 2. Since Miss Wilfer rejected me, I have never again urged my suit. 3. Whenever I looked at Susan she gave me a frank full-hearted smile. 4. So the tiny woman closed the shutter of the cottage window and fastened the door, and trembling from head to foot for fear that any one should suspect her, opened a very secret place, and showed the Princess a shadow. 4. And yet tired though he was after his three long days, Soames dreaded the moment when the car should stop. 6. I extinguished my taper, locked my bureau, and left her, since she would not leave me. 7. Once they reached the open country the car leapt forward like a mad thing. 8. He was a tall fellow with a very wide mouth and prematurely bald in front, so that he appeared to have a colossal forehead. 9. The reference was as plain as it was unexpected. 10. Early as he was, another man was there before him. 11. We're as we're made. 12. They were all smiling widely at me as I came toward them. 13. He was a fattish, worried, untidy man, always looking as if he had slept in the expensive clothes he wore. 14. Mr. Pancks has come down into the Yard tonight, on purpose that you should hear him. 15. The most I can say now is that it is very cold in San Francisco, and I am freezing. 16. Give me your promise that this shall be done. 17. In that small room he seemed even bigger than I remembered him. 18. Whatever I intend to do I'll do without advice from the outside. 19. Breakfast was not yet over before the men came to put up the marquee. 20. He prized the pencil, because it had been a gift from his mother. 21. As soon as he had gone, I looked at the clock. 22. After a sleepless night, he (Cowperwood) wrote his resignation to the chairman of the board of directors, in order that he should be prepared to hand it to him at once.

**Ex. 5. Insert the appropriate conjunction.**

1. a) We decided to do our bit of work separately ... discuss each other's part when it was ready (and, but). b) We tried to do our bit of work together ... soon decided to divide it for each to do his part separately (and, but).
2. The war took away all his friends ... relative. He remained quite alone without friends ... relatives (and, or).
3. He did not understand anything of what was going on around him ... did he try to ... nobody bothered to make him care (and, nor).
4. a) I couldn't find an answer to my question ... in books ... in lecture halls (either ... or, neither ... nor). b) ... the books I read ... the people I spoke to could give me an answer to my question (either ... or, neither ... nor).
5. a) Much was said ... in favour of ... against the project (neither ... nor, both ... and). b) Nothing was said ... in favour of ... against the project (neither ... nor, either ... or). c) He spoke of the project in a round about way ... in favour of ... against it (either ... or, neither ... nor, both ... and).
6. a) It was late, ... everybody felt tired (so, and). b) It was late, ... we agreed to break till tomorrow (so, and), c) We agreed to break till tomorrow, ... it was already late (so, for, and).

**Ex. 6. Combine the following sentences so as to make them either complex or compound, using the conjunctions given in brackets. (Make the necessary changes).**

1. I did not read the book to the end. It was not very interesting (because, therefore).
2. We left early. We wanted to reach the village before sunset (so that, so).
3. You are not in earnest. You speak in such a careless and indifferent manner (if, or else).
4. The expedition may be dangerous. I shall take part in it (although, nevertheless).
5. The road was very muddy. The car would not move (so ... that, for).

**Ex. 7. State whether the words given in bold type are conjunctions, pronouns or adverbs.**

1. You must promise me to take a thorough rest **when** your vacation begins this summer.
2. She could not tell **when** he would come and **if** he would come at all.
3. That was the epoch in Soames' life **when** he had been living down the disgrace of being deserted by his first wife.
4. He had often promised himself a visit to **where** the old Forsytes came from.
5. The



first person upon **whom** Arthur's eyes fell **as** he entered the room **where** the students' little gatherings were held, was his old playmate, Dr. Warren's daughter. 6. June would at least know something about those two; **whether** they were still at Wansdon, or **where** they were. 7. Young Jolyon asked the Inspector to tell him **what** happened, and the latter ... detailed such facts **as** were known. 8. From Chamonix they went on by the Tete-Noire to Martigny, **where** they stopped to rest, **as** the weather was stiflingly hot. 9. Before Arthur had been a month in the prison, the mutual irritation had reached such a height **that** he and the colonel could not see each other's faces without losing their temper. 10. The announcement by Michael ... **that** Fleur would be bringing Kit home the next morning, caused Soames to say: 'I'd like to have a look at **that** part of the world ... Don't say anything to Fleur. I'll let her know **when** I get down to Nettleford'. 11. Montanelli's voice was rather low, but full and resonant, with a silvery purity of tone **that** gave to his speech a peculiar charm.

---

## THE INTERJECTION

---

**Point out all the interjections and say whether they are emotional or imperative.**

1. 'The Boers are a hard nut to crack, uncle James', 'H'm!' muttered James. 'Where do you get your information? Nobody tells'. 2. 'Oh! My eye!' he said looking very low-spirited, 'I am sorry for that'. 3. 'Good Lord!' said Fleur. 'Am I only twenty-one? I feel forty-eight'. 4. 'Good Heavens!' cried my mother, 'you'll drive me mad!' 5. Heavens! How dull you are! 6. 'Oh, Karen', he said, 'it's good to have you around!' 7. Alas! The white house was empty and there was a bill in the window. 8. A man jumped on top of the barricade and, waving exuberantly, shouted. 'Americans! Hurrah.' 9. Hallo, Michael! I'm rather late; been to the club and walked home. 10. Ah! You are both of you good-natured. 11. 'Hark!' cried the Dodger at this moment, 'I heard the tinkler', catching up the light, he crept softly upstairs. 12. 'Who is that?' she cried. 'Hush, hush!' said one of the women, stooping over her ... 13. Well, I don't like those mysterious little pleasure trips that he is so fond of taking. 14. Now, Maria, here is a character to your taste ... 15. Here! I've had enough of this. I'm going.

---

## THE PARTICLE

---

Point out the particles and define the group each belongs to.

1. It is just because I want to save my soul that I am marrying for money. 2. Rosa feared this power, but she enjoyed it too. 3. Oh, doctor, do you think there is any chance? Can she possibly survive this last terrible complication? 4. We merely want to see the girl and take her away. 5. I shall also try to be there at ten. 6. Don't come any nearer. You're at just the right distance. 7. He had taken up with it solely because he was starving. 8. Soames was but following in the footsteps of his father. 9. I am interested only in man. Life I love and before death I am humble. 10. Just then the telephone rang. 11. Tom, you'll manage it and if you do I'll give you something ever so nice. 12. He needed the peculiar sympathy that a woman alone can give. 13. She ought to have written at once and told him exactly what had happened. 14. I think, he's been a simply perfect father, so long as I can remember. 15. They did not even look at him. 16. Not a career for a man of his ability. 17. We followed him along the corridor ... He never looked back, he never hesitated.

### Revision Exercises

Ex. 1. State whether the boldfaced word is an adverb or a preposition.

1. Somebody **outside** pulled at the door. 2. **Outside** it was getting dark. 3. It was a nice little place and he liked the high mountain hauling up **beyond**. 4. **Outside**, and **beyond** the road, lay the Park. 5. There, just **inside** the door, stood a wide, shallow tray full of pots of pink lilies. 6. It was dark **inside**. 7. He wandered **down** the street again. 8. He dressed for dinner early and was first **down**. 9. I drove back **up** the narrow road. 10. They mounted **up** and **up**, through the musty smell of an old close house, little used, to a large garret bedroom. 11. It was just that he had never really looked into a human face **before**. 12. The afternoon **before** the attack was spent in putting the boats ready.

Ex. 2. State whether the boldfaced word is an adverb, a conjunction, a preposition, or a postposition.

1. They were reluctant to interfere **in** their niece's private affairs. 2. A cool March air came **in** through the revolving door whenever the page-boy passed the guests **in** or out. 3. She came back with a package and got in and we drove **on**. 4. Bertine and I are just **on** our way home, truly. 5. **After**

dinner they sat about and smoked. 6. **After** she had left me I brooded on my situation. 7. A little **before** midnight the thick fog that had been falling over the city became rain. 8. She thought for a moment **before** she replied. 9. You have never worked at anything like this **before**, have you? 10. I was born there, but have never been there **since** I was a baby. 11. I knew him well, but it was some years **since**, and I valued him as a man of singular probity and spirit. 12. On one point they were in agreement – George had degenerated terribly **since** joining the army. 13. At other times he was working in his vineyard from dawn till the heat drove him to rest and then again, when it was a trifle cooler **till** dusk. 14. After tea she fulfilled that promise to herself and took Jon **up** the hill. 15. Rinaldi picked **up** the candle, lit it and went on reading. 16. He glanced **up** reproachfully, caught the comic lift of her eyebrow just like their father's, laughed and felt better. 17. Lady Anna stood at the open window, looking across at the broad field and the river bank **beyond** ... 18. ... there was a little hill and **beyond** a stone wall, an apple orchard. 19. What, after all, did an extra five minutes matter? But he would pretend to himself that they mattered **beyond** measure. 20. But he missed Fleur, who came **down** last. 21. The sun was going **down** and the day was cooling off.

**Ex. 3. Define the part of speech the boldfaced words belong to.**

1. The **only** thing is to cut the knot for good. 2. I have **only** just come, I have not seen him yet. 3. Carrie said nothing, **but** bent over her work. 4. It seemed to him that life was hollow, and existence **but** a burden. 5. You never talk anything **but** nonsense. 6. He could not go on living here **alone**. 7. For your suggestion **alone** I could have you court-martialed. 8. Clare had made **one** of her greatest efforts. 9. With age **one** suffered from the feeling that **one** might have enjoyed things more. 10. The lieutenant's exile was to be only a temporary **one**. 11. He steeled himself with **that** phrase, and tiptoed on; but the next door was harder to pass. 12. His tone was different from **that** of his friends. 13. The startling discovery so terrified her **that** she could hardly repress a sound. 14. He ate all **that** was placed before him ... 15. Look **round** this room. 16. They were only five at a **round** table, and it was very pleasant indeed. 17. I have just returned from my **round** of medical visits ... 18. At that moment the woman at the fire turned **round**. 19. Columbus intended to **round** Africa and thus find a waterway to India. 20. **Once** we got inside the dressing-room, Jack lay down and shut his eyes. 21. And life, unfortunately, is something that you can lead but **once**.



---

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

---

1. Alexander, L.G. (1991). Longman English Grammar Practice (for intermediate students). UK: Longman.
2. Blokh, M.Y., Lebedeva, A.Y., Denisova, V.S. (1985). English Grammar Exercises. Moscow: Prosveshcheniye.
3. Boguslavskaya, G.P. (1992). English Grammar Practice. First Year. Minsk: Viðeyðaya ðkola.
4. Buks, K., Rusmane, E. (1992). A Manual of English Grammar. Rīga: Zvaigzne.
5. Ganshina, M., Vasilevskaya, N. (1958). English Grammar. Moscow: Foreign Languages Publishing House.
6. Grizulina, A.P., Golubeva, L.K., (1982). The Non-Finite Forms of the Verb. Moscow: Vysðaya ðkola.
7. Kaushanskaya, V.L., Kooner, R.L. (1959) A Grammar of the English Language. Leningrad: Prosveshcheniye.
8. Kobrina, N.A., Koreneva, E.A., Ocovskaya, M.I., Guzeeva, K.A., (2001). An English Grammar. Morphology. Syntax. St. Petersburg: Soyuz.
9. Krutikov, Y.A., Kuzmina, I.S., (1960). Exercises in Modern English. Moscow: Foreign Language Publishing House.
10. Krylova, I.P., (1978). An English Grammar Practice Book. Moscow: Higher School.
11. Krylova, I.P., (1986). A Grammar of Present-Day English. Practice Book. Moscow: Higher School.
12. Leech, G., (1989) An A-Z of English Grammar and Usage. UK: Nelson.
13. Leech, G., Svartovik, G., (1983) A Communicative Grammar of English. Moscow: Prosveshcheniye, published by agreement with Longman group limited.
14. Natanson, E.A., (1968), Oblique Moods. Modal Verbs. Moscow: UMO.
15. Rutsikaya, V.F., Ignatova, S.A., (1989). A Practical Grammar of English. Minsk: Vysðaya ðkola.
16. Swan, M., (1997). Practical English Usage. Second Edition. OUP.
17. Vaisbein, I.M., Turayeva, L.Y., (1966). Modal Verbs in Spoken English. Leningrad: Prosveshcheniye.





**L. Rumjanceva, B. Kalniņa. Angļu valodas gramatika. II.  
"Vingrinājumi". 2. daļa.** – Daugavpils: Saule, 2003. – 208 lpp.

Teksta salicēja: **Tatjana Rumjanceva**  
Maketēja: **Marina Stočka**

---

Datorsalikums. Parakstīts iespiešanai 2.07.2003. g.  
Izdevējdarbības reģ. apliecība Nr. 2-0197.  
Formāts 60x90/16; 13 iespiedl., 9,45 izdevn. l.  
Pasūtījuma Nr. 56. Metiens 300 eks.  
Iespēsts DU izdevniecībā «Saule» —  
Saules iela 1/3, Daugavpils, Latvija, LV-5400. 2003. g.